Townsend Press 英语词汇学习丛书

Groundwork FOR A BETTER VOCABULARY

英语词汇基础

美国大学生中
使用最多的
词汇丛书！



R. Kent Smith • Beth Johnson • Carole Mohr

上海外语教育出版社
外教社 SHANGHAI FOREIGN LANGUAGE EDUCATION PRESS

图书在版编目（CIP）数据

英语词汇基础 /(美)史密斯(Smith, R. K.)等编著 .
—上海：上海外语教育出版社，2005
(英语词汇学习丛书)

ISBN 7-81095-457-1

I. 英… II. 史… III. 英语—词汇 IV. H313

中国版本图书馆 CIP 数据核字（2004）第 109367 号

出版发行：上海外语教育出版社
（上海外国语大学内） 邮编：200083
电　　话：021-65425300（总机）
电子邮箱：bookinfo@sflep.com.cn
网　　址：http://www.sflep.com.cn　http://www.sflep.com
责任编辑：汪义群

印　　刷：中共上海市委党校印刷厂
经　　销：新华书店上海发行所
开　　本：850×1168　1/16　印张 14.75　字数 394 千字
版　　次：2005 年 6 月第 1 版　2006 年 10 月第 2 次印刷
印　　数：5 000 册

书　　号：ISBN 7-81095-457-1 / H・155
定　　价：27.00 元

本版图书如有印装质量问题，可向本社调换

出版前言

学习任何一门语言，词汇学习是其中的基础工程和关键部分。掌握尽可能多的单词词组，是每个语言学习者孜孜以求的目标。然而我们经常听到的声音是：单词太难记了！

市场上介绍单词记忆法或是词汇学习方法的书可谓俯拾皆是，提到的方法又是林林总总五花八门，词根词缀法、联想记忆法等等，不一而足。有没有一种更有趣更有效的学习词汇的方法呢？在此我们谨把美国大学生中用得最多最广的一套词汇学习丛书推介给大家。

该丛书由美国Townsend Press出版，我社原版引进，并根据中国学习者特点做了些改编。与时下图书介绍的单词记忆方法不同，该丛书的作者们倡导的是根据认知原理，通过积极学习（active learning）来熟悉掌握单词的方法。具体步骤是：首先，作者把要介绍的8个或者10个生词置于两道练习题中，让学习者通过语境，利用单词所在上下文中的例证、同义词、反义词等线索，推测（infer）或是猜测（guess）生词的意义。其次，就是通过大量的、反复的、多类型的练习，帮助学习者由推测或猜测词义，通过搭配练习（matching words with definitions）来识别词义（identify each word's meaning），通过完成句子、同义、反义或是类比（analogy）关系选择以及完形填空等练习，让学习者不断接触该生词并在各种场合中不断运用它，从而达到理解、巩固、掌握并最终自然而然地记忆单词的目的。在整个过程中，学习者是一个积极主动的参与者，而不是一个被动的记忆者。

除了上述主张的记忆方法不同，本套书还有以下特色：

(1) **Words-in-Context Approach:** 本套书中的每个章节首先把要介绍的8个或10个生词通过练习题的形式介绍给读者，让读者通过上下文，猜测词义、熟悉词义并作出选择。

(2) **Abundant Exercises:** 词义熟悉之后，编写者设置了大量的、各种类型的练习，包括词义搭配、选择题、完型填空等，加深巩固该章节中所介绍的8个或10个单词。每五六个章节组成一个单元，除了章节中的练习外，每一单元中还设有阶段复习性练习题，以巩固该单元中所介绍的所有词汇。

(3) **Focus on Essential Words:** 读者看到书后，很自然地就会问为什么每本书中只讲述了250或300个单词呢？每本书前言部分对这一问题作了回答：编写者做了大量的调查，参考词频信息，运用电脑对所选词汇进行复核，最后确定了每一阶段的基本词汇。书中列出的也是这些

基本词汇的最常用意义。参照我国英语教学要求，六本书中 *Vocabulary Basics* 所涉及词汇与我国高中及非英语专业一年级相当、*Groundwork for a Better Vocabulary* 所涉及词汇与我国非英语专业四级水平相当（4200词汇水平）、*Building Vocabulary Skills* 所涉及词汇与我国非英语专业六级、英语专业低年级相当（6500词汇水平）、*Improving Vocabulary Skills* 所涉及词汇与我国英语专业一二年级相当（8000词汇水平）、*Advancing Vocabulary Skills* 所涉及词汇与我国英语专业高年级相当（12000词汇水平）、*Advanced Word Power* 所涉及词汇与我国英语专业高年级及以上水平相当。

(4) **Appealing Content:** 单纯的死记硬背单词十分枯燥，而且效果也不一定好。本丛书除了上述三个特色外，在练习内容的选择上也颇费心思。练习题内容饶有趣味，能吸引读者，让读者在记忆单词的同时，还能巩固语言知识。

(5) **A Comprehensive Vocabulary Program:** 本系列6本图书，相互联系，按照由易到难排列，读者学完一本以后，可以继续学习更高层次的几本，不断挑战自己。

(6) **User-friendly Format:** 为便于读者的学习，图书在版式设计上也颇费心思，让读者使用方便。

最后，我们衷心希望广大读者通过这套书的系统学习，不再觉得英语单词很难记忆。其实只要方法对了，记单词是一个很有趣、很有成就感的过程。

上海外语教育出版社

Contents

Note: For ease of reference, the titles of the reading selections in each chapter are included.

UNIT FOUR

UNIT FIVE

APPENDIXES

(Continues on next page)

Preface

The problem is all too familiar: *students just don't know enough words.* Reading, writing, and content teachers agree that many students' vocabularies are inadequate for the demands of courses. Weak vocabularies limit students' understanding of what they read and the clarity and depth of what they write.

The purpose of *Groundwork for a Better Vocabulary* and the other books in the Townsend Press vocabulary series is to provide a solid, workable answer to the vocabulary problem. In the course of 25 chapters, *Groundwork for a Better Vocabulary* teaches 250 important basic words. Here are the book's distinctive features:

1 **An intensive words-in-context approach.** Studies show that students learn words best by reading and using them repeatedly in different contexts, not through rote memorization. The book gives students an intensive in-context experience by presenting each word in nine different settings. Each chapter takes students through a productive sequence of steps:

- Students infer the meaning of each word by considering two sentences in which it appears and then choosing from multiple-choice options.
- On the basis of their inferences, students identify each word's meaning in a matching test. They are then in a solid position to deepen their knowledge of a word.
- Finally, they strengthen their understanding of a word by applying it in five different words-in-context passages, including sentence-completion activities and high-interest fill-in-the-blank passages.

Each encounter with a word brings it closer to becoming part of the student's permanent word bank. *No comparable vocabulary book gives such sustained attention to the words-in-context approach.*

2 **Abundant practice.** Along with extensive practice in each chapter, there are a crossword puzzle and a set of unit tests at the end of every five-chapter unit. The puzzle and tests reinforce students' knowledge of the words in each chapter. In addition, most chapters reuse several words from earlier chapters (such repeated words are marked with small circles, like this°), allowing for more reinforcement. All this practice means that students learn in the surest possible way: by working closely and repeatedly with each word.

3 **Controlled feedback.** The opening activity in each chapter gives students three multiple-choice options to help them decide on the meaning of a given word. The multiple-choice options also help students to complete the matching test that is the second activity of each chapter. These features enable students to take an active role in their own learning.

4 **Focus on essential words.** A good deal of time and research went into selecting the 250 words featured in the book. Word frequency lists were consulted, along with lists in a wide range of vocabulary books. In addition, the authors and editors each prepared their own lists. A computer was used to help in the consolidation of the many word lists. A long process of group discussion

then led to final decisions about the words that would be most helpful for students on a basic reading level.

5 **Appealing content.** Dull practice materials work against learning. On the other hand, meaningful, lively, and at times even funny sentences and selections can spark students' attention and thus enhance their grasp of the material. For this reason, a great deal of effort was put into creating sentences and selections with both widespread appeal and solid context support. We have tried throughout to make the practice materials truly enjoyable for teachers and students alike. Look, for example, at the selections on page **13** that serve as the Final Check in Chapter 1.

6 **Clear format.** The book has been designed so that its very format contributes to the learning process. Each chapter consists of four two-page spreads. In the first two-page spread (the first such spread is on pages **8–9**), students can easily refer to all ten words in context while working on the matching test, which provides a clear meaning for each word. The other two-page spreads allow students to see the words in a variety of contexts as they work through the fill-in activities.

7 **One in a sequence of books.** *Vocabulary Basics* is the most fundamental book in the Townsend Press vocabulary series. It is followed by *Groundwork for a Better Vocabulary* (a slightly more advanced basic text), *Building Vocabulary Skills* (an even more advanced basic text), *Improving Vocabulary Skills* (an intermediate text), and *Advancing Vocabulary Skills* (a more advanced text). The most advanced book in the Townsend Press vocabulary series is *Advanced Word Power*. Together, the books create a strong vocabulary foundation that will make any student a better reader, writer, and thinker.

ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

We are grateful for the enthusiastic comments provided by users of the Townsend Press vocabulary books over the life of the first edition. Particular thanks go to the following reviewers for their many helpful suggestions: Barbara Brennan Culhane, Nassau Community College; Carol Dietrick, Miami-Dade Community College; Larry Falxa, Ventura College; Jacquelin Hanselman, Hillsborough Community College; Shiela P. Kerr, Florida Community College at Jacksonville; John M. Kopec, Boston University; Belinda E. Smith, Wake Technical Community College; Daniel Snook, Montcalm Community College; and William Walcott, Montgomery College. We appreciate as well the editing help of John Langan and Paul Langan; the proofreading of Susan Gamer; and the remarkable design, editing, and proofreading skills of the indefatigable Janet M. Goldstein.

R. Kent Smith ***Beth Johnson*** ***Carole Mohr***

Introduction

WHY VOCABULARY DEVELOPMENT COUNTS

You have probably often heard it said, "Building vocabulary is important." Maybe you've politely nodded in agreement and then forgotten the matter. But it would be fair for you to ask, "Why is a good vocabulary so important? Can you prove it?" Here are four convincing reasons.

1 Common sense tells you what many research studies have also shown: vocabulary is a basic part of understanding what you read. A word here and there may not stop you, but if there are too many words you don't know, comprehension will suffer. The content of textbooks is often difficult enough; you don't want to work as well on understanding the words which express that content.

2 Vocabulary is a major part of almost every standardized test, including reading achievement tests, college entrance exams and vocational placement tests. Test developers know that vocabulary is a key measure of both one's learning and one's ability to learn. It is for this reason that they include a separate vocabulary section as well as a reading comprehension section. The more words you know, then, the better you are likely to do on such important tests.

3 Studies have shown that students with strong vocabularies are more successful in school. And one widely known study found that a good vocabulary, more than anything else, was common to people enjoying successful careers. Words are, in fact, the tools not just of better reading, but of better writing, speaking, listening, and thinking as well. The more words you have at your command, the more effect you can have on the people around you.

4 In today's world, a good vocabulary counts more than ever. Far fewer people work on farms or in factories. Far more are in jobs that provide services or process information. More than ever, words are the tools of our trade: words we use in reading, writing, listening, and speaking. In addition, experts say that workers of tomorrow will be called on to change jobs and learn new skills at an ever-increasing pace. The keys to survival and success will be the abilities to read, write, speak, and learn in a quick and skillful way. A solid vocabulary is essential for all of these skills.

Clearly, there is powerful proof that building vocabulary is a key to success. The question then becomes "What is the best way of going about it?"

WORDS IN CONTEXT: THE KEY TO VOCABULARY DEVELOPMENT

Memorizing lists of words is a traditional method of vocabulary development. However, a person is likely to forget such memorized lists quickly. Studies show that to master a word, you must see and use it in various contexts — that is, different real-life sentences and paragraphs. By working actively and repeatedly with a word, you greatly increase the chance of really learning it.

The following activity will make clear how this book is organized and how it uses a words-in-context approach. Answer the questions or fill in the missing words in the spaces provided.

Vocabulary Chapters

Turn to Chapter 1 on pages **8–13**. This chapter, like all the others, consists of eight parts:

The **first part** of the chapter, on pages **8–9**, is titled ______________________________.

The left-hand column lists the ten words in the chapter. Under each **boldfaced** word is its ________________________ (in parentheses). For example, the pronunciation of *challenge* is ________________________.

Below the pronunciation guide for each word is its part of speech. The part of speech shown for *challenge* is __________________. The vocabulary words in this book are mostly nouns, adjectives, and verbs. **Nouns** are words used to name something — a person, place, thing, or idea. Familiar nouns include *boyfriend, city, hat*, and *truth*. **Adjectives** are words that describe nouns, as in the following word pairs: *former* boyfriend, *large* city, *red* hat, *whole* truth. All of the **verbs** in this book express an action of some sort. They tell what someone or something is doing. Common verbs include *read, drive, discover,* and *imagine.*

To the right of each word are two sentences that will help you understand its meaning. In each sentence, the **context** — the words surrounding the boldfaced word — provides clues you can use to figure out the definition. There are four common types of context clues — examples, synonyms, antonyms, and the general sense of the sentence. Each is briefly described on the pages that follow.

Common Context Clues

1 Examples

A sentence may include examples that show what an unfamiliar word means. For instance, take a look at the following item from Chapter 2 for the word *category*:

> When I was in high school, I didn't seem to fit into any **category**. I wasn't an athlete, a scholar, or a rebel.

The second sentence gives three examples of *category* — being "an athlete, a scholar, or a rebel." To figure out what *category* means, think about those examples. What is the speaker saying he or she doesn't fit into? Look at the answer choices below, and in the space provided, write the letter of the answer you feel is correct.

___ *Category* means a. goal. b. feeling. c. group.

Since the speaker is talking about the types of groups in high school, you may have correctly guessed that answer *c* is the right choice.

2 Synonyms

Synonyms are words that mean the same or almost the same as another word. The words *joyful, happy*, and *pleased* are synonyms — they all mean about the same thing. A synonym serves as a context clue by telling the meaning of an unknown word that is nearby. For instance, the sentence below from Chapter 1 includes a synonym clue for the vocabulary word *peculiar.*

My brother thinks my chip-and-dip sandwiches are **peculiar**, but I don't think they're as strange as the peanut-butter-and-tuna sandwiches he eats.

Rather than repeat *peculiar* in the second part of the sentence, the author used a synonym. Find that synonym, and then from the choices below, write in the letter of the meaning of *peculiar.*

___ *Peculiar* means a. attractive. b. unusual. c. innocent.

In the sentence from Chapter 1, *strange* is used as a synonym for *peculiar.* Since another word for *strange* is *unusual*, the answer is *b*.

3 Antonyms

Antonyms are words with opposite meanings. For example, *help* and *harm* are antonyms, as are *work* and *rest*. An antonym serves as a context clue by telling the opposite meaning of a nearby unknown word. The sentence below from Chapter 2 provides an antonym clue for the word *deliberate.*

Manny's pushing me was quite **deliberate**; it wasn't accidental at all.

To underline the point, the author used an antonym of *deliberate*. Find the antonym, and use it to help you figure out what *deliberate* means. Then write in the letter of the meaning you choose.

___ *Deliberate* means a. easy. b. fair. c. planned.

The sentence suggests that *deliberate* pushing and *accidental* pushing are very different things. So we can guess that *deliberate* means the opposite of *accidental*. Another word that is the opposite of *accidental* is *planned*, so *c* is the correct answer — *deliberate* means "planned."

4 General Sense of the Sentence

Even when there is no example, synonym, or antonym clue in a sentence, you can still figure out the meaning of an unfamiliar word. For example, look at the sentence below from Chapter 1 for the word *surplus*.

More and more restaurants are donating their **surplus** food to homeless people.

After thinking carefully about the context, you should be able to figure out what kind of food restaurants would be given to homeless people. Write the letter of your choice.

___ *Surplus* means a. strange. b. extra. c. main.

From the general sense of the sentence from Chapter 1 plus your own common sense, you probably guessed that the restaurants are donating "extra" food. Answer *b* is correct.

By looking closely at the pair of sentences provided for each word, as well as the answer choices, you should be able to decide on the meaning of a word. As you figure out each meaning, you are working actively with the word. You are creating the groundwork you need to understand and to remember the word. Getting involved with the word and developing a feel for it, based upon its use in context, is the key to word mastery.

It is with good reason, then, that the directions at the top of page **8** tell you to use the context to figure out each word's ________________________. Doing so deepens your sense of the word and prepares you for the next activity.

- The **second part** of the chapter, on page **9**, is titled ________________________________.

According to research, it is not enough to see a word in context. At a certain point, it is important to see the meaning of a word. The matching test provides that meaning, but it also makes you look for and think about that meaning. In other words, it continues the active learning that is your surest route to learning and remembering a word.

Note the caution that follows the test. Do not proceed any further until you are sure that you know the correct meaning of each word as used in context.

Keep in mind that a word may have more than one meaning. In fact, some words have quite a few meanings. (If you doubt it, try looking up in a dictionary, for example, the word *make* or *draw*.) In this book, you will focus on one common meaning for each vocabulary word. However, many of the words have additional meanings. For example, in Chapter 1, you will learn that *challenge* means "a test of one's abilities," as in the sentence "My new job is a real challenge." If you then look up *challenge* in the dictionary, you will discover that it has other meanings — for example, "a call to take part in a contest or fight," as in "Ted never turns down a challenge to play any kind of game." After you learn one common meaning of a word, you will find yourself gradually learning its other meanings in the course of your school and personal reading.

- The **third and fourth parts** of the chapter, on page **10**, are titled ________________________ and __________________________.

The first check consists of ten sentences that give you an opportunity to test your understanding of the ten words. After filling in the words, check your answers in the key at the back of the book. (Be sure to use the answer key as a learning tool only. Doing so will help you to master the words and to prepare for the remaining activities and the unit tests, for which answers are not provided.) The second check on page **10** then gives you another chance to deepen your understanding of the words.

- The **fifth part** of the chapter, on page **11**, is titled ___________________________. Here you will have a chance to learn words that are related to many of the ten main words in the chapter. Look on page **11**, for example, and write down the three words that are related to *dependent* (one of the words in the chapter): ______________________ ______________________ ______________________.

- The **sixth part** of the chapter, on page **12**, offers practice in one of three areas: Word Parts, Synonyms and Antonyms, or Analogies. Each is explained below.

Word Parts, Synonyms-Antonyms, and Analogies

Word Parts

The first and third chapters in each unit contain word-part practices.

Word parts are building blocks used in many English words. Learning word parts can help you to spell and pronounce words, unlock the meanings of unfamiliar words, and remember new words.

This book covers twenty word parts. You will learn two types: prefixes and suffixes. A **prefix** is a word part that is found at the beginning of words. When written separately, a prefix is followed by a hyphen to show that something follows it. For example, the prefix *sur* is written like this: *sur-*. *Sur-* can mean "beyond" or "additional," as in *surpass* (to go beyond) and *surcharge* (an additional charge).

A **suffix** is a word part that is found at the end of words. To show that something always comes before a suffix, a hyphen is placed at the beginning. For instance, the suffix *ly* is written like this: *-ly*. One common meaning of *-ly* is "in a certain way," as in the words *gratefully* (in a grateful way) and *angrily* (in an angry way).

Each word-part practice begins with the meaning of a word part and examples. Fill-in items then help you remember and recognize the word parts. To see what these items are like, try the one below from Chapter 1 for the word part *sur*. On the answer line, write the word that best completes the sentence.

surcharge surface surpass surplus surtax

______________________ In addition to the usual taxes, people who earn over a certain amount will have to pay a ___.

The sentence suggests that people who earn over a certain amount will have to pay an additional tax. Since you now know that *sur-* can mean "additional," you probably wrote the correct word on the line: *surtax* (an additional tax).

(There is a third type of word part — a root. You will not be working with roots in this book. Roots are word parts that carry the basic meanings of words. For example, one common root is *vis*, which means "to see," as in the words *visit* and *vision*.)

Synonyms and Antonyms

The second and fourth chapters in each unit contain synonym-antonym practices. You have already learned in this introduction that a **synonym** is a word that means the same or almost the same as another word and that an **antonym** is a word that means the opposite of another word. These practices will deepen your understanding of words by getting you to think about other words with the same or opposite meanings.

To see what the synonym questions are like, do the example below. Write the letter of the word that most nearly means the same as the first word, *hard*.

___ **hard**

a. new b. difficult
c. far d. bad

Since *difficult* is another way of saying *hard*, the correct answer is *b*. Now, to see

what the antonym questions are like, do the example item below. Write in the letter of the word that most nearly means the opposite of *kind*.

___ **kind**

a. silly b. busy
c. young d. cruel

The opposite of *kind* is *cruel,* so *d* is the correct answer.

Analogies

The last chapter in each unit contains an analogy practice, yet another way to deepen your understanding of words. An **analogy** is a similarity between two things that are otherwise different. Doing an analogy question is a two-step process. First you have to figure out the relationship in a pair of words. Those words are written like this:

LEAF : TREE

What is the relationship between the two words above? The answer can be stated like this: A leaf is a part of a tree.

Next, you must look for a similar relationship in a second pair of words. Here is how a complete analogy question looks:

LEAF : TREE ::

a. pond : river b. foot : shoe
c. page : book d. beach : sky

And here is how the question can be read:

___ LEAF is to TREE as

a. *pond* is to *river.* b. *foot* is to *shoe.*
c. *page* is to *book.* d. *beach* is to *sky.*

To answer the question, you have to decide which of the four choices has a relationship similar to the first one. Check your answer by seeing if it fits in the same wording as you used to show the relationship between *leaf* and *tree:* A ___ is part of a ___. Which answer do you choose?

The correct answer is *c*. Just as a *leaf* is part of a *tree,* a *page* is part of a *book.* On the other hand, a *pond* is not part of a *river,* nor is a *foot* part of a *shoe,* nor is a *beach* part of the *sky.*

We can state the complete analogy this way: *Leaf* is to *tree* as *page* is to *book.*

Here's another analogy question to try. Begin by figuring out the relationship between the first two words.

___ COWARD : HERO ::

a. soldier : military b. infant : baby
c. actor : famous d. boss : worker

Coward and *hero* are opposite types of people. So you need to look at the other four pairs to see which has a similar relationship. When you think you have found the answer, check to see that the two words you chose can be compared in the same

way as *coward* and *hero:* ___ and ___ are opposite types of people.

In this case, the correct answer is *d*; *boss* and *worker* are opposite kinds of people. (In other words, *coward* is to *hero* as *boss* is to *worker*.)

By now you can see that there are basically two steps to doing analogy items:

1) Find out the relationship of the first two words.
2) Find the answer that expresses the same type of relationship as the first two words have.

Now try one more analogy question on your own. Write the letter of the answer you choose in the space provided.

___ SWING : BAT ::

a. drive : car
b. run : broom
c. catch : bat
d. fly : butterfly

If you chose answer *a,* you were right. *Swing* is what we do with a *bat,* and *drive* is what we do with a *car.*

- The **seventh part** of the chapter, on page **13**, is titled ______________________________. Here you have the context of two interesting passages in which to practice applying the words. The first two such passages, on page **13**, are titled ______________________________ and ______________________________.

FINAL NOTES

1 You now know, in a nutshell, how to proceed with the words in each chapter. Make sure that you do each page very carefully. Remember that as you work through the activities, you are learning the words.

How many times in all will you use each word? If you look, you'll see that each chapter gives you the opportunity to work with each word at least nine times. Each time that you work with a word adds to the likelihood that the word will become part of your active vocabulary. You will have further opportunities to use the word in the crossword puzzle and tests that end each unit.

In addition, many of the words are repeated in context in later chapters of the book. Such repeated words are marked with small circles, like this°. For example, what word from Chapter 1 is repeated in the second Final Check passage on page **19** of Chapter 2? ____________________

2 The facts are in. A strong vocabulary is a source of power. Words can make you a better reader, writer, speaker, thinker, and learner. They can dramatically increase your chances of success in school and in your job.

But words will not come without effort. They must be learned in a program of regular study. If you commit yourself to learning words, and you work actively and honestly with the chapters in this book, you will not only enrich your vocabulary — you will enrich your life as well.





Pretest of the Whole Book

This test contains 100 items. In the space provided, write the letter of the choice that is closest in meaning to the boldfaced word.

Important: Keep in mind that this test is for diagnostic purposes only. **If you do not know a word, leave the space blank rather than guess at it.**

____ 1. To **communicate** is to: **a)** anger **b)** inform **c)** hurry **d)** mistake

____ 2. If you **deceive**, you: **a)** mislead **b)** encourage **c)** prevent **d)** forbid

____ 3. An **earnest** person is: **a)** dishonest **b)** wealthy **c)** unpleasant **d)** sincere

____ 4. A story that is **fiction** is: **a)** made up **b)** exciting **c)** violent **d)** romantic

____ 5. A **theory** is a(n): **a)** opportunity **b)** unproven explanation **c)** certainty **d)** excuse

____ 6. To **determine** is to: **a)** suspect **b)** find out **c)** persuade **d)** compliment

____ 7. To **dispose of** is to: **a)** throw away **b)** ignore **c)** keep **d)** repeat

____ 8. Something that is **evident** is: **a)** hidden **b)** frightening **c)** obvious **d)** musical

____ 9. To **preserve** is to: **a)** pretend **b)** protect **c)** absorb **d)** expect

____ 10. To **restore** is to: **a)** repair **b)** destroy **c)** bury **d)** lift up

____ 11. To **appeal** to is to: **a)** make a request **b)** say no **c)** take away the outside part **d)** repeat

____ 12. To **establish** is to: **a)** start **b)** knock down **c)** flatten **d)** repeat

____ 13. One's **potential** is one's: **a)** ancestors **b)** age **c)** possibility **d)** preference

____ 14. A **variety** is a(n): **a)** opinion **b)** mixture **c)** reason **d)** delay

____ 15. Something **wholesome** is: **a)** healthful **b)** disgusting **c)** foreign **d)** childlike

____ 16. To **possess** is to: **a)** plan **b)** adjust **c)** leave unchanged **d)** own

____ 17. A **procedure** is a(n): **a)** method **b)** opinion **c)** public **d)** piece of property

____ 18. To **renew** is to: **a)** find **b)** make active again **c)** force one's will upon **d)** attempt

____ 19. **Resources** are: **a)** supplies **b)** costs **c)** responses **d)** agreements

____ 20. To be **sufficient** is to be: **a)** less than is needed **b)** humorous **c)** empty **d)** enough

____ 21. To **assume** is to: **a)** suppose to be true **b)** prove to be false **c)** not care **d)** argue for

____ 22. To **exhaust** is to: **a)** refill **b)** remove from sight **c)** use up **d)** fall

____ 23. The **maximum** amount is: **a)** the worst **b)** the most **c)** the lightest **d)** the least

____ 24. An **objective** is a(n): **a)** bad influence **b)** reason to believe **c)** insult **d)** goal

____ 25. To **protest** is to: **a)** speak out against **b)** encourage **c)** prove **d)** test

(Continues on next page)

____ 26. If you are **anxious**, you are: a) sleepy b) young c) busy d) worried

____ 27. To **convince** is to: a) cause to believe b) refuse to accept c) disregard d) clean up

____ 28. An **inferior** product is: a) highly valued b) poor in quality c) heavy d) unbreakable

____ 29. To **overwhelm** is to: a) dissolve b) understand c) make helpless d) make whole

____ 30. A **thorough** job is: a) carefully done b) wasted c) forgotten d) well-paying

____ 31. To be **current** is to be: a) modern b) few in number c) good tasting d) likable

____ 32. To **maintain** is to: a) release from captivity b) keep in existence c) prove to be correct d) admire

____ 33. A **minimum** number is: a) the largest possible b) desirable c) the smallest possible d) more than expected

____ 34. To **originate** is to: a) imitate b) begin c) impress d) pretend

____ 35. To be **reliable** is to be: a) untrustworthy b) easily tricked c) dependable d) healthy

____ 36. To be **conscious** is to be: a) drowsy b) awake c) depressed d) purposeful

____ 37. Something **external** is: a) buried deeply b) on the outside c) unimportant d) helpful

____ 38. To be **incredible** is to be: a) unbelievable b) showy c) humble d) wasteful

____ 39. **Internal** means: a) inner b) uncommon c) easy d) understood by few

____ 40. A **remedy** is a(n): a) source of amusement b) usual manner of doing something c) collection of writings d) cure

____ 41. **Appropriate** actions are: a) rude b) impulsive c) unwise d) proper

____ 42. To **bewilder** is to: a) calm b) confuse c) accept d) explain

____ 43. **Emotion** is: a) feeling b) eyesight c) movement d) payment

____ 44. To **investigate** is to: a) abandon b) make secure c) examine d) insist

____ 45. To be **legible** is to be: a) heavy b) clear c) empty d) noisy

____ 46. To **analyze** is to: a) disturb b) get rid of (something) c) dislike d) examine

____ 47. A **category** is a(n): a) group of similar things b) means of expression c) lack of understanding d) denial

____ 48. One who is **critical** is: a) well-liked b) disapproving c) lacking intelligence d) not taking sides in a quarrel

____ 49. A **deliberate** act is: a) done on purpose b) unwise c) amazing d) criminal

____ 50. **Frustration** is: a) great delight b) discouragement c) cruelty d) luck

(Continues on next page)

____ 51. To be **accustomed to** is to be: a) unused to b) in the habit of c) unable to d) angry at

____ 52. To **misinterpret** is to: a) have respect b) prefer c) understand incorrectly d) get rid of

____ 53. To **occur** is to: a) disappear b) repeat c) respond d) happen

____ 54. When you **revise**, you: a) correct and improve b) discard c) copy without giving credit d) fail to complete

____ 55. A **version** is a: a) report based on one point of view b) poem c) hatred d) deliberately mean remark

____ 56. A **conflict** is a(n): a) period of time b) point of view c) lesson d) disagreement

____ 57. **Stress** is: a) tension b) relaxation c) enjoyment d) excitement

____ 58. A **unanimous** decision is: a) poorly thought out b) mixed c) based on complete agreement d) mistaken

____ 59. To **vary** is to: a) change b) insist c) remain the same d) recognize

____ 60. A **vicinity** is a(n): a) heated argument b) area around a place c) written pamphlet d) type of lamp

____ 61. A **burden** is a(n): a) hardship b) joy c) reply d) payment

____ 62. To be **economical** is to be: a) wasteful b) rich c) thrifty d) forgiving

____ 63. An **extravagant** person is: a) critical b) wasteful c) wise d) messy

____ 64. **Security** is: a) protection b) loneliness c) immaturity d) ridicule

____ 65. To **sympathize** is to: a) share feeling b) object c) refuse d) avoid

____ 66. To **coincide** is to: a) remove from consideration b) happen at the same time c) make clear d) read carefully

____ 67. A **considerable** size is: a) rather small b) too small c) too large d) rather large

____ 68. An **intentional** act is: a) on purpose b) accidental c) misguided d) against the law

____ 69. To be **unstable** is to be: a) usual b) strong c) unsteady d) complete

____ 70. To **utilize** is to: a) suggest b) make use of c) control by force d) accept as fact

____ 71. Something **artificial** is: a) natural b) impressive c) not natural d) worn out

____ 72. **Frequency** means: a) how often something happens b) how fast something is c) how loud something is d) where something comes from

____ 73. To **represent** is to: a) avoid talking about b) prefer c) be a symbol of d) allow to happen

____ 74. Something **temporary** is: a) expected to last forever b) impossible to achieve c) serving for a limited time d) clearly seen

____ 75. A **triumph** is a: a) victory b) defeat c) compromise d) battle

(Continues on next page)

____ 76. An **attitude** is a: a) decrease b) success c) frame of mind d) height

____ 77. A **contrast** is a: a) striking difference b) similarity c) suggestion d) bright color

____ 78. To be **excessive** is to be: a) kindly b) slow to anger c) not enough d) too much

____ 79. A **fragile** object is: a) expensive b) easily broken c) richly decorated d) tasteless

____ 80. To **indicate** is to: a) pay attention to b) fail to see c) go in d) point out

____ 81. An **emphasis** is a(n): a) refusal to speak b) betrayal c) importance given to something d) stubborn act

____ 82. To **interpret** is to: a) confuse b) make an effort c) light from within d) explain

____ 83. To **propose** is to: a) persuade b) suggest c) exaggerate d) leave out

____ 84. An **ultimate** experience is: a) common b) inefficient c) dangerous d) the greatest

____ 85. To be **vague** is to be: a) unclear b) shining c) in fashion d) embarrassing

____ 86. Something **apparent** is: a) impossible to see with the naked eye b) made up of many small parts c) obvious d) hard to understand

____ 87. If something is **automatic**, it: a) is easily moved b) operates by itself c) cannot change d) improves over time

____ 88. To **fulfill** is to: a) carry out b) fail at a task c) understand another's feelings d) give advice

____ 89. To **influence** is to: a) misunderstand b) excuse c) be offended d) persuade

____ 90. To **transfer** is to: a) find fault b) discontinue c) send from one place to another d) inspect

____ 91. To **complicate** is to: a) smooth over b) adjust c) make difficult d) recognize

____ 92. A **conscience** is a(n): a) sense of being awake b) inability to decide c) sense of right and wrong d) skill with numbers

____ 93. To **counsel** is to: a) improve b) approve c) give advice d) meet

____ 94. To **detect** is to: a) get b) complain c) remark d) notice

____ 95. To be **transparent** is to be: a) sent away b) dark in color c) seen through easily d) unusual

____ 96. To **comprehend** is to: a) dislike b) repeat c) protect d) understand

____ 97. Something **dramatic** is: a) impressive b) hard to notice c) odd d) boring

____ 98. To be **frank** is to be: a) untruthful b) youthful c) honest d) painful

____ 99. To **illustrate** is to: a) give an example b) destroy c) repair d) send off

____ 100. An **impression** is a(n): a) lie b) iron c) opinion d) center (of something)

STOP. This is the end of the test. If there is time remaining, you may go back and recheck your answers. When the time is up, hand in both your answer sheet and this test booklet to your instructor.

Unit One

Chapter 1

challenge	principal
dependent	solitary
fertile	suitable
peculiar	surplus
preference	transform

Chapter 2

analyze	deliberate
attitude	excessive
category	fragile
contrast	frustration
critical	indicate

Chapter 3

accompany	preserve
desperate	pursue
determine	rejection
dispose of	restore
evident	scarce

Chapter 4

abundant	distinct
betray	exaggerate
comparison	inhabit
demonstrate	neutral
dispute	reduction

Chapter 5

aggravate	intentional
cease	interference
coincide	obnoxious
considerable	unstable
humane	utilize

Unit One: *Pretest*

In the space provided, write the letter of the choice that is closest in meaning to the **boldfaced** word.

____ 1. **challenge** a) a piece of sporting equipment b) something requiring extra effort c) an untrue and malicious story d) a source of pain

____ 2. **dependent** a) refusing aid b) relying on others c) easily angered d) unable to read

____ 3. **fertile** a) alone b) definite c) productive d) shy

____ 4. **peculiar** a) friendly b) highly skilled c) violent d) odd

____ 5. **preference** a) expression of dislike b) form of punishment c) suggestion d) first choice

____ 6. **principal** a) most important b) small in number c) physically large d) purposeful

____ 7. **solitary** a) full of life b) alone c) clever d) whole

____ 8. **suitable** a) proper b) well-dressed c) filled with regret d) absent

____ 9. **surplus** a) insufficient b) ruined c) extra d) planned

____ 10. **transform** a) change b) remain the same c) frighten d) create

____ 11. **analyze** a) disturb b) get rid of (something) c) dislike d) examine

____ 12. **attitude** a) decrease b) success c) frame of mind d) dislike

____ 13. **category** a) group with characteristics in common b) means of expression c) lack of understanding d) denial

____ 14. **contrast** a) striking difference b) similarity c) suggestion d) bright color

____ 15. **critical** a) well-liked b) disapproving c) lacking intelligence d) not taking

____ 16. **deliberate** a) done on purpose b) unwise c) amazing d) criminal

____ 17. **excessive** a) kindly b) slow to anger c) not enough d) too much

____ 18. **fragile** a) poorly made b) easily broken c) richly decorated d) tasteless

____ 19. **frustration** a) great delight b) discouragement c) cruelty d) luck

____ 20. **indicate** a) pay attention (to) b) fail to see c) object (to) d) point out

____ 21. **accompany** a) abandon b) meet unexpectedly c) receive d) go along with

____ 22. **desperate** a) in great need b) content c) furious d) sorrowful

____ 23. **determine** a) suspect b) find out c) persuade d) compliment

____ 24. **dispose of** a) throw away b) ignore c) silence d) repeat

____ 25. **evident** a) hidden b) brightly colored c) obvious d) musical

(Continues on next page)

____ 26. **preserve** a) pretend b) protect c) absorb d) expect

____ 27. **pursue** a) capture b) chase c) control d) rest

____ 28. **rejection** a) invitation b) action c) possibility d) refusal

____ 29. **restore** a) repair b) destroy c) bury d) lift up

____ 30. **scarce** a) in great amount b) not needed c) hard to find d) empty

____ 31. **abundant** a) quickly used up b) unwanted c) overpriced d) more than enough

____ 32. **betray** a) cooperate with b) allow to happen c) be disloyal to d) weigh down

____ 33. **comparison** a) act of considering how two things are similar or different b) sense of freedom from danger c) type of literature made of imaginary events d) belief based upon little information

____ 34. **demonstrate** a) explain by showing b) break into pieces c) bury d) have complete knowledge of

____ 35. **dispute** a) formal agreement b) sense of hopelessness c) quarrel d) opinion

____ 36. **distinct** a) shady b) without value c) able to produce offspring d) obvious

____ 37. **exaggerate** a) overstate b) lessen in size c) state the truth d) avoid

____ 38. **inhabit** a) put to good use b) serve as a substitute for c) make up d) live in

____ 39. **neutral** a) changing one's opinion readily b) refusing to take sides in a quarrel c) discovering the truth d) acting against one's stated beliefs

____ 40. **reduction** a) shipment b) explanation c) decrease d) correction

____ 41. **aggravate** a) improve b) correct c) ignore d) make worse

____ 42. **cease** a) continue b) prepare c) stop d) allow

____ 43. **coincide** a) remove from consideration b) happen at the same time c) make clear d) read carefully

____ 44. **considerable** a) less than expected b) heartless c) impossible d) large

____ 45. **humane** a) kind b) absent-minded c) cruel d) talented

____ 46. **intentional** a) on purpose b) accidental c) misguided d) against the law

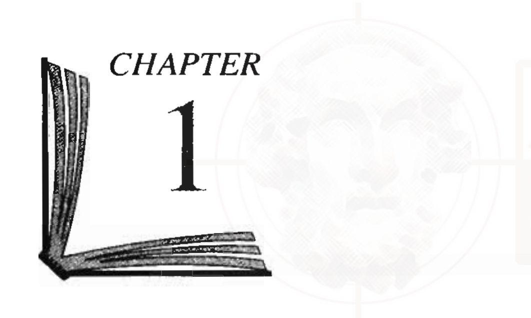
____ 47. **interference** a) sudden quiet b) loss of heat c) getting in the way d) acceptance

____ 48. **obnoxious** a) well-meaning b) unpleasant c) comical d) unclear

____ 49. **unstable** a) usual b) strong c) unsteady d) complete

____ 50. **utilize** a) suggest b) make use of c) control by force d) accept as fact

SCORE: (Number correct) ________ × 2 = __________ %



CHAPTER 1

challenge	**principal**
dependent	**solitary**
fertile	**suitable**
peculiar	**surplus**
preference	**transform**

Ten Words in Context

In the space provided, write the letter of the meaning closest to that of each **boldfaced** word. Use the context of the sentences to help you figure out each word's meaning.

1 challenge
/ˈtʃælɪndʒ/
– noun

- Ginny enjoys rock climbing. It's a difficult **challenge**, but she feels very proud after making a climb.
- When the baby sitter arrived, he stared at the four active little boys he was expected to watch. "This will be quite a **challenge**," he sighed.

___ *Challenge* means   a. reason.   b. something boring.   c. something requiring effort.

2 dependent
/dɪˈpendənt/
– adjective

- Some animals can take care of themselves as soon as they are born, but human babies are **dependent** upon their parents for years.
- Tyrone's father said to him, "You are still much too **dependent** on me. It's about time you got a job and supported yourself."

___ *Dependent* means   a. relying.   b. leading.   c. puzzling.

3 fertile
/ˈfɜːtaɪl/
– adjective

- Because its soil is so **fertile**, Iowa has many farms.
- Our daughter's pet hamsters were so **fertile** that we ended up selling many baby hamsters back to the pet store.

___ *Fertile* means   a. common.   b. large.   c. able to produce.

4 peculiar
/pɪˈkjuːlɪə(r)/
– adjective

- Jack didn't know why people were giving him **peculiar** looks until he realized there was a large hole in his pants.
- My brother thinks my chip-and-dip sandwiches are **peculiar**, but I don't think they're as strange as the peanut-butter-and-tuna sandwiches he eats.

___ *Peculiar* means   a. attractive.   b. unusual.   c. innocent.

5 preference
/ˈprefərəns/
– noun

- There are Chinese, Italian, and Indian restaurants nearby. What's your **preference** for dinner tonight?
- What is your color **preference** for the living room? Do you like cool blues and greens or warm oranges and yellows?

___ *Preference* means   a. choice.   b. skill.   c. effect.

6 principal
/ˈprɪnsəpəl/
– adjective

- The **principal** cause of most success is hard work, not luck or talent.
- The queen of England has no real power. The **principal** leader of England is the prime minister.

___ *Principal* means   a. most recent.   b. false.   c. chief.

7 solitary
/ˈsɒlɪtərɪ/
– adjective

- After taking a **solitary** vacation in my cabin for two weeks, I was ready to return to the company of other humans.
- In the mood to be by herself, Melba looked forward to spending the evening in such **solitary** activities as reading and taking a long bubble bath.

___ *Solitary* means a. friendly. b. proper. c. done alone.

8 suitable
/ˈsju:təbl/
– adjective

- Sharon asked her mother if her blue dress was **suitable** for a funeral, or if she had to wear black.
- Because the prices and food are so good, we decided that the Red Lion Inn would be **suitable** for our bowling banquet.

___ *Suitable* means a. right. b. too expensive. c. important.

9 surplus
/ˈsɜ:pləs/
– adjective

- More and more restaurants are donating their **surplus** food to homeless people.
- The Barkleys had more kitchen supplies than they needed, so they gave their **surplus** pots and pans to their son, who had just gotten his own apartment.

___ *Surplus* means a. strange. b. extra. c. main.

10 transform
/trænsˈfɔ:m/
– verb

- I plan to **transform** this messy attic into an attractive office.
- The magician seemed to **transform** a chicken's egg into an egg the size of a basketball.

___ *Transform* means a. to accept. b. to repeat. c. to change.

Matching Words with Definitions

Following are definitions of the ten words. **Print** each word next to its definition. If you look closely at each word in context, you will be able to figure out its meaning.

1. ________________ Producing or able to produce much fruit, large crops, or many children
2. ________________ Most important; main; leading
3. ________________ Relying on others for aid or support
4. ________________ Extra; more than what is used or needed
5. ________________ Odd; strange
6. ________________ A test of one's abilities; anything that calls for a special effort
7. ________________ Happening or done alone
8. ________________ To change in form or appearance
9. ________________ Right for a certain purpose; proper; fitting
10. ________________ Choice; first choice; something preferred

CAUTION: Do not go any further until you are sure the above answers are correct. Then you can use the definitions to help you in the following practices. Your goal is eventually to know the words well enough so that you don't need to check the definitions at all.

➣ *Sentence Check 1*

Using the answer line, complete each item below with the correct word from the box.

a. **challenge**	b. **dependent**	c. **fertile**	d. **peculiar**	e. **preference**
f. **principal**	g. **solitary**	h. **suitable**	i. **surplus**	j. **transform**

__________ 1. Just one can of spinach ___s Popeye from a weakling into a hero.

__________ 2. If land is always planted with the same crop, it will become less ___. Changing crops from one year to the next keeps the soil rich.

__________ 3. Although my ___ is for a daytime job, I will work at night if necessary.

__________ 4. Max and Helen had more clothes than they needed, so they donated their ___ clothes to a thrift store.

__________ 5. I can't imagine what that ___ odor is from — it's like a mixture of burning tires and freshly cut grass.

__________ 6. A man lived by himself in a cave most of his life — yes, his was a ___ life.

__________ 7. I know you have reasons for quitting school. What's the ___ reason?

__________ 8. Baby-sitting with a lot of children isn't easy — it's a ___.

__________ 9. My neighbors are looking for ___ homes for the eight puppies their collie gave birth to. They want homes where the pups will be well cared for.

__________ 10. Sometimes Estela felt like giving up, but she knew she couldn't because she had three young children and an elderly mother who were ___ on her.

➣ *Sentence Check 2*

Using the answer lines, complete each item below with **two** words from the box.

____
__________ 1–2. When I'm not feeling well, my ___ is to have lots of company, but when my husband is sick, he prefers to be ___.

____
__________ 3–4. In the last year, our neighbors have ___ed their unattractive yard into something beautiful. The ___ change they made was to put in some lovely flowering plants; all of the other changes were small ones.

____
__________ 5–6. Ben is happy to live at home, pay no rent, and use his mother's car, but I don't think it's ___ for a grown man to be so ___ on his parents.

____
__________ 7–8. Our tomato plants are almost too ___. It is a ___ to use or give away all the tomatoes before they spoil.

____
__________ 9–10. We had so many tomatoes that we ended up inventing some ___ recipes to use up the ___ fruit; perhaps the strangest was "Peanut Butter Tomato Pie."

➢ *Related Words*

Once you learn a new word, you can more easily understand many related words. Below are ten words related to the core words of this chapter. Use their definitions to help you write in the word that best completes each item.

a. **dependence**, *noun*	The state of relying on others for help or support
b. **independent**, *adjective*	Not needing help from others
c. **preferable**, *adjective*	Deserving to be chosen over another; more desirable
d. **suit**, *verb*	To be right for; fit
e. **transformation**, *noun*	A striking change

______________ 1. A part-time job in the evenings would ___ my school schedule perfectly.

______________ 2. A baby's ___ on its parents is complete; it needs them to do everything for it.

______________ 3. By the age of 2, most children have moments of wanting to be ___, and they will push their parents away, saying, "Me do it!"

______________ 4. There are two hotels in town — the Burke and the Oakwood Towers — but in my opinion, the Burke is ___ because it is quieter and has a swimming pool.

______________ 5. At my ten-year high-school reunion, I saw several people who had gone through an amazing ___ — one quiet, shy girl had become an outgoing beauty, and one of the wildest boys in the class had become a priest.

f. **challenging**, *adjective*	Difficult; requiring special effort
g. **dependable**, *adjective*	Able to be trusted or relied upon
h. **fertilize**, *verb*	To make soil richer by adding material to it
i. **infertile**, *adjective*	Unable to produce children
j. **peculiarity**, *noun*	Something odd or strange

______________ 6. Many gardeners save old food scraps and grass clippings and use them to ___ the garden.

______________ 7. Myrna is a nice person, but she does have one ___: she won't eat anything that she hasn't prepared herself.

______________ 8. My beginning math course was easy enough, but I found algebra much more ___.

______________ 9. Jaime is the most ___ friend I have — he's always there when I need him.

______________ 10. When my sister and her husband realized they were ___, they decided to adopt three children who were brothers and sisters.

Word Parts

A. The prefix *trans-* can mean "across" or "change to."

Examples: *transport* — to take from one place across to another
translate — to change from one language to another

a. **transatlantic**	b. **transform**	c. **translate**
d. **transplant**	e. **transportation**	

On each answer line, write the word from the box that best completes the item.

________________ 1. Trina's job is to ___ business letters from Spanish into English.

________________ 2. You can ___ a room simply by painting it a different color.

________________ 3. The doctor ___ed one of Mark's kidneys into his sister.

________________ 4. Since my grandmother doesn't drive and there is no public ___ in her area, she depends on me to take her shopping.

________________ 5. The ship will cross the Atlantic Ocean next week. The ship's ___ trip begins in New York City and ends in England.

B. The prefix *sur-* means "over," "upon," beyond," or "additional."

Examples: *surpass* — to go beyond
surtax — an additional tax

On each answer line, write the word from the box that best completes the item.

f. **surcharge**	g. **surface**	h. **surpass**
i. **surplus**	j. **surtax**	

________________ 6. I like to protect and shine the ___s of my wooden tables with wax.

________________ 7. My garden produced so much zucchini that I gave big bagfuls of ___ squash to all of my neighbors.

________________ 8. In addition to the usual taxes, people who earn over a certain amount will have to pay a ___.

________________ 9. The drive to raise money for the children's hospital was so successful that the money raised ___ed the goal that was set.

________________ 10. Because we brought so much luggage on our trip, we had to pay the airline a ___.

Final Check

Read the passages carefully. Then fill in each blank with the word that best fits the context.

A. Johnny Appleseed

a. **fertile**	b. **peculiar**	c. **solitary**
d. **surplus**	e. **transform**	

John Chapman, who is known to the world as Johnny Appleseed, must have been a strange sight. His (1)____________________ clothing included cloth sacks for shirts and a tin pot for a hat.

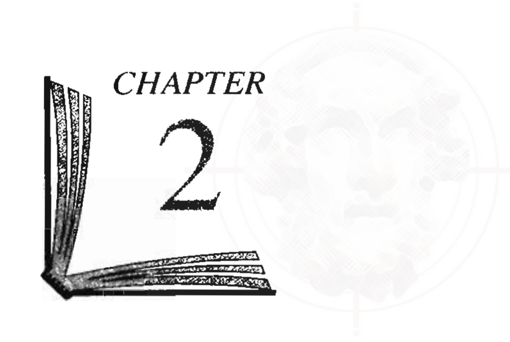
In western Pennsylvania, where Johnny lived, many people grew apples. But there weren't any apples in the lands further west, which were just then being cleared and settled. So Johnny wandered among his neighbors, asking them for their (2)____________________ apple seeds. During his lifetime, Johnny walked thousands of miles, making many long trips from his home to the valleys of Ohio and Indiana. Everywhere he went, he scattered seeds. Many of those seeds fell on (3)____________________ ground and grew into strong trees.

Johnny often wandered through areas where Native Americans fought with the white settlers. Since Johnny was a loner, his travels were always (4)____________________, and he carried no weapon — yet he was never harmed. The Indians believed that the Great Spirit especially loved people like Johnny, who was not like other people. In his own quiet way he (5)____________________ed the American wilderness, filling it with thousands of flowering, fruit-filled trees.

B. The Lovable Leech?

f. **challenge**	g. **dependent**	h. **preference**
i. **principal**	j. **suitable**	

As highly developed as we human beings like to think we are, the fact is that we are still (6)____________________ upon many lower forms of life. The (7)____________________ way that this is true, of course, is our use of meat to eat and skins to wear. But there are other ways, sometimes strange ways, that we rely on other creatures. Take, for example, the leech. It would be a (8)____________________ for anyone to really like a leech. It is a disgusting-looking worm that lives in freshwater ponds and streams. As many people have discovered when they've gone swimming, a leech's (9)____________________ for dinner is human blood. It loves to attach itself to a swimmer's foot and sink in its teeth — as many as three hundred of them. The bite does not cause any pain. But the leech can suck out eight times its own weight in blood. "How disgusting," you are probably thinking. But listen to this. In recent years, doctors have found that leeches are the most (10)____________________ way to remove extra blood from a person after an injury, especially around the eyes. Yes, leeches are honored guests in many modern hospitals.





analyze	**deliberate**
attitude	**excessive**
category	**fragile**
contrast	**frustration**
critical	**indicate**

Ten Words in Context

In the space provided, write the letter of the meaning closest to that of each **boldfaced** word. Use the context of the sentences to help you figure out each word's meaning.

1 analyze
/ˈænəlaɪz/
– verb

- Someone in the laboratory will **analyze** the blood sample to see if the patient has an illness.
- Before we can suggest solutions, we must carefully **analyze** the city's money problems.

___ *Analyze* means a. to plan. b. to study. c. to create.

2 attitude
/ˈætɪtjuːd/
– noun

- Athletes need to have a positive **attitude**. Even if they have lost the previous game, they need to come into the next one ready to win.
- Rudy came to the party with a poor **attitude**; he was sure that he'd be bored and wouldn't have any fun.

___ *Attitude* means a. set of rules. b. background. c. way of thinking.

3 category
/ˈkætɪgərɪ/
– noun

- When I was in high school, I didn't seem to fit into any **category**. I wasn't an athlete, a scholar, or a rebel.
- The small store had many jazz and rock recordings, but not much in the **category** of country music.

___ *Category* means a. goal. b. feeling. c. group.

4 contrast
/ˈkɒntrɑːst/
– noun

- Everyone is surprised to see that there's a **contrast** between Peggy's eyes — one eye is brown, and the other is green.
- I was struck by the **contrast** between the fancy cars and houses west of Main Street and the poor neighborhoods to the east.

___ *Contrast* means a. disappointment. b. place. c. difference.

5 critical
/ˈkrɪtɪkəl/
– adjective

- My boss can be very **critical** of me when I don't do my best work, but she's also quick to praise me when I do well.
- My aunt is **critical** of her neighbors. She calls them lazy because their house needs painting and their yard is overgrown with weeds.

___ *Critical* means a. fault-finding. b. jealous. c. proud.

6 deliberate
/dɪˈlɪbərət/
– adjective

- Manny's pushing me was quite **deliberate**; it wasn't accidental at all.
- I'm sure our neighbor knew that the tall tree he was planting would keep the sun from our flowers. It was a **deliberate** dirty trick.

___ *Deliberate* means a. easy. b. fair. c. planned.

7 excessive
/ɪk'sesɪv/
– adjective

- **Excessive** speed caused the accident; the truck driver was going nearly eighty miles an hour.
- Mrs. Hill's concern about her little boy's health is **excessive**. She rushes him to the doctor every time he gets the sniffles or scrapes his knee.

___*Excessive* means a. overly great. b. off and on. c. normal.

8 fragile
/'frædʒaɪl/
– adjective

- The lamp is **fragile**, so when you pack it, please put it in a deep box with plenty of newspaper around it.
- When our daughter was little, we kept our **fragile** dishes and glasses out of her reach. We knew she would break them.

___*Fragile* means a. broken. b. strong. c. breakable.

9 frustration
/frʌ'streɪʃən/
– noun

- Trying to learn to roller-blade, I fell down twenty times and then crashed into a wall. Feeling more **frustration** than pain, I finally gave up.
- Elaine felt great **frustration** when she failed her driving test for the third time.

___*Frustration* means a. relief. b. discouragement. c. pleasure.

10 indicate
/'ɪndɪkeɪt/
– verb

- Jeff's frown seemed to **indicate** that he was unhappy with our plan.
- The parking-lot attendant pointed to **indicate** that I should drive the car all the way up to the fence.

___*Indicate* means a. to hide. b. to show. c. to plan.

Matching Words with Definitions

Following are definitions of the ten words. **Print** each word next to its definition. If you look closely at each word in context, you will be able to figure out its meaning.

1. ________________ A feeling of anger and helplessness that comes from bad luck, defeat, or failure; disappointment
2. ________________ A point of view; state of mind; way of thinking or feeling
3. ________________ A group of people or things having something in common; type
4. ________________ Too much; more than is reasonable
5. ________________ Done on purpose; carefully planned
6. ________________ An obvious difference
7. ________________ Disapproving; tending to find fault
8. ________________ Easily broken or damaged
9. ________________ To examine carefully; study closely
10. ________________ To show; serve as a sign or signal

CAUTION: Do not go any further until you are sure the above answers are correct. Then you can use the definitions to help you in the following practices. Your goal is eventually to know the words well enough so that you don't need to check the definitions at all.

➢ *Sentence Check 1*

Using the answer line, complete each item below with the correct word from the box.

a. **analyze**	b. **attitude**	c. **category**	d. **contrast**	e. **critical**
f. **deliberate**	g. **excessive**	h. **fragile**	i. **frustration**	j. **indicate**

________ 1. To avoid the ___ of failing the driving test again, Elaine has decided to take driving lessons.

________ 2. A planned action is ___.

________ 3. ___ eating over the holidays led to my gaining three pounds.

________ 4. A road sign with a picture of a leaping deer ___s that deer often cross the road at that spot.

________ 5. After losing every game last season, the soccer players began training this year with a poor ___. If they don't transform° their outlook, they will have another losing season.

________ 6. Something that is ___ can be easily damaged.

________ 7. Which ___ of movie do you prefer, comedy or action-adventure?

________ 8. When Maggie ___d her reasons for wanting to marry Joe, she realized that they were not good ones.

________ 9. Many teenagers feel their parents are too ___ of their clothing, music, and friends.

________ 10. I was surprised by the ___ between kind, gentle Bill and his impatient, bad-tempered brother.

➢ *Sentence Check 2*

Using the answer lines, complete each item below with **two** words from the box.

____
________ 1–2. There is a large ___ between things that fit in the ___ of junk food and those foods needed for basic nutrition.

____
________ 3–4. When a child is learning to play a musical instrument, parents should have an encouraging ___. Rather than being ___ of the child, parents should find things to praise.

____
________ 5–6. When we broke three glasses while washing the dishes, it wasn't ___. They were just too ___.

____
________ 7–8. Most people can deal with some ___, but if discouragement becomes ___, it can actually cause illness.

____
________ 9–10. When we ___ the citywide election returns, they will ___ how each neighborhood voted.

➣ *Related Words*

Once you learn a new word, you can more easily understand many related words. Below are ten words related to the core words of this chapter. Use their definitions to help you write in the word that best completes each item.

a. **analysis**, *noun*	A careful study of something, especially by looking at its parts
b. **contrasting**, *adjective*	Showing a noticeable difference
c. **deliberately**, *adverb*	Purposely
d. **excess**, *noun*	An amount that is greater than needed
e. **indication**, *noun*	A sign of something

______________ 1. A fever is one ___ of illness. Headache and an upset stomach are other signs of being sick.

______________ 2. No matter how many times Mike says it was an accident, I believe he ___ tried to knock me down.

______________ 3. Our garden is growing more vegetables than our family can eat, so we're giving the ___ to neighbors.

______________ 4. The laboratory's ___ of the blood sample showed that the patient was quite healthy.

______________ 5. We painted our living room in ___ colors — one wall is pale yellow and the others are dark green.

f. **categorize**, *verb*	To put into groups
g. **criticism**, *noun*	Comments about faults
h. **excessively**, *adverb*	To a point that goes beyond what is reasonable or wise
i. **frustrated**, *adjective*	Feeling discouragement
j. **uncritical**, *adjective*	Accepting of faults

______________ 6. When the candy machine didn't return my change, I was so ___ that I kicked it.

______________ 7. My parents ___ their books by subject — mysteries, health, humor, and so on.

______________ 8. My instructor's ___ of my paper was tough, but helpful. In addition to pointing out the paper's faults, he suggested ways to correct them.

______________ 9. I'm completely ___ when it comes to pizza. Frozen or fresh-baked, crisp or soggy, thick crust or thin — I love it all.

______________ 10. Even though her son is now in college, Mrs. Hill is still ___ concerned about him. She calls him every day to be sure he's eating right and getting enough sleep.

➣ *Synonyms and Antonyms*

A. Synonyms. Write the letter of the word or phrase that most nearly means the **same** as each boldfaced word.

_____ 1. **analyze**

a. remember b. examine
c. find fault with d. use

_____ 2. **attitude**

a. height b. outlook
c. knowledge d. skill

_____ 3. **category**

a. group b. purpose
c. reaction d. problem

_____ 4. **critical**

a. absent b. frightened
c. nervous d. disapproving

_____ 5. **indicate**

a. plan b. conceal
c. show d. disappoint

B. Antonyms. Write the letter of the word or phrase that most nearly means the **opposite** of each boldfaced word.

_____ 6. **contrast**

a. difference b. environment
c. enjoyment d. sameness

_____ 7. **deliberate**

a. accidental b. harmful
c. helpful d. fortunate

_____ 8. **excessive**

a. not real b. not enough
c. unexpected d. required

_____ 9. **fragile**

a. damaged b. unbreakable
c. unnecessary d. beautiful

_____ 10. **frustration**

a. showing ignorance b. feeling hatred
c. being satisfied d. expressing surprise

➣ *Final Check*

Read the passages carefully. Then fill in each blank with the word that best fits the context.

A. Finding Fault — And What to Do About It

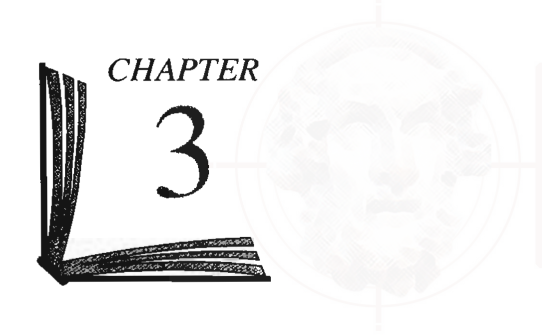
a. **attitude**	b. **category**	c. **critical**
d. **excessive**	e. **frustration**	

Are you one of those people who are constantly finding fault? Are you very (1)__________________ of everyone else's mistakes? If the washing machine or the stereo breaks down, is your reaction (2)________________ anger and (3)________________? If so, beware! Too much bad temper and discouragement could be harming your health. Scientists say that faultfinders and those who are often angry actually seem to have more heart attacks. So if you fall into this (4)____________________ of people, it's a smart idea to try to change your outlook. Learn to take things more calmly; learn to be more patient when someone or something disappoints you. If your (5)__________________ improves, your health may improve too.

B. What Do Your Hobbies Reveal About You?

f. **analyze**	g. **contrast**	h. **deliberate**
i. **fragile**	j. **indicate**	

Mira, Pat, and Celia are sisters, close in age and similar in looks — but what a (6)______________________ there is in their leisure activities! Mira loves an exciting challenge° and often takes (7)______________________ risks. She has mastered the skateboard, she drives in stock-car races, and she's even tried boxing. In fact, she says she'd go skydiving if only she could afford it. Pat is a collector. She spends her spare time searching for old crystal and china — and taking care of it. She never minds the hours it takes her to wash and dust her precious, (8)____________________ treasures. Then there's Celia, who wants to spend every possible minute reading — and that's all! You've never met Mira, Pat, and Celia, but doesn't this tell you a lot about them? If we (9)______________________ how people spend leisure time, their interests and hobbies can reveal a great deal about their personalities. What do you think your hobbies and other activities would (10)____________________ about you?



CHAPTER 3

accompany	**preserve**
desperate	**pursue**
determine	**rejection**
dispose of	**restore**
evident	**scarce**

Ten Words in Context

In the space provided, write the letter of the meaning closest to that of each **boldfaced** word. Use the context of the sentences to help you figure out each word's meaning.

1 accompany
/əˈkʌmpənɪ/
– *verb*

- The Myers asked my sister to **accompany** them to the seashore to help take care of their young children.
- In popular music, words usually **accompany** the tune. In much classical music, there are no words to go with the notes.

___ *Accompany* means a. to go before. b. to go after. c. to go with.

2 desperate
/ˈdespərət/
– *adjective*

- Extremely ill people may be so **desperate** for a cure that they will try anything.
- The earthquake victims are **desperate** for food and clothing.

___ *Desperate for* means a. harmed by. b. in great need of. c. surprised by.

3 determine
/dɪˈtɜːmɪn/
– *verb*

- The doctor in the emergency room **determined** from an x-ray that Chen's ankle was sprained, not broken.
- Using a calculator, I **determined** that the "super-giant" box of laundry soap was a better buy than the "family economy" box.

___ *Determine* means a. to regret. b. to remember. c. to discover.

4 dispose of
/dɪsˈpəʊz əv/
– *verb*

- The sign said, "Lungs at work. Please **dispose of** all cigarettes, cigars, and pipes before entering."
- After losing forty pounds, Herb decided to **dispose of** all the clothes that reminded him of his old size. He never wanted to see them again.

___ *Dispose of* means a. to get rid of. b. to pay for. c. to use up.

5 evident
/ˈevɪdənt/
– *adjective*

- The fact that my aunt dyes her hair is **evident** — her gray roots show.
- To make it **evident** that she didn't want to go out with James again, Crystal sent him back all his letters and gifts.

___ *Evident* means a. useful. b. easy to see. c. unlikely.

6 preserve
/prɪˈzɜːv/
– *verb*

- Steps are being taken to **preserve** the remaining giant redwood trees of California and Oregon for future generations.
- To **preserve** its valuable old fabrics, the museum keeps them away from bright lights and extreme temperatures.

___ *Preserve* means a. to keep safe. b. to sell off. c. to seek.

7 pursue
/pəˈsjuː/
– *verb*

- At the age of 49, the woman decided to **pursue** a degree in social work and become a social worker.
- Victor plans to **pursue** an acting career in New York City. His goal is to become a great actor, not a great star.

___ *Pursue* means a. to avoid. b. to work toward. c. to replace.

8 rejection
/rɪˈdʒekʃən/
– *noun*

- My brother was upset when he received a letter of **rejection** from a college he wanted to attend.
- Nita wasn't too disturbed when she didn't get the job she had interviewed for. "If you can't handle **rejection**, you have some growing up to do," she said.

___ *Rejection* means a. respect. b. not being accepted. c. bad taste.

9 restore
/rɪˈstɔː(r)/
– *verb*

- During the 1980s, the Statue of Liberty was **restored**. The damaged torch and the 1,600 iron bands that hold the copper skin to the frame were replaced.
- Surprisingly, there have been cases where a bump on the head has **restored** the sight of a blind person.

___ *Restore* means a. to fix. b. to harm. c. to give away.

10 scarce
/skeəs/
– *adjective*

- Since 1909 pennies are **scarce**, the one I own may be worth a lot of money.
- In the book *The Long Winter*, the author tells about a time when food was so **scarce** that she and her family lived on little more than bread for weeks.

___ *Scarce* means a. common. b. clear. c. hard to find.

Matching Words with Definitions

Following are definitions of the ten words. **Print** each word next to its definition. If you look closely at each word in context, you will be able to figure out its meaning.

1. ________________ Obvious; clear
2. ________________ To find out exactly; figure out
3. ________________ To throw or give away; get rid of
4. ________________ Having a great need or desire
5. ________________ Rare; hard to get; not enough to meet demand
6. ________________ To bring back to a normal or former condition; repair
7. ________________ To protect; keep in good condition
8. ________________ A saying "no" (to a request or desire); refusal
9. ________________ To try to get or succeed in; seek
10. ________________ To go along with; be together with

CAUTION: Do not go any further until you are sure the above answers are correct. Then you can use the definitions to help you in the following practices. Your goal is eventually to know the words well enough so that you don't need to check the definitions at all.

Sentence Check 1

Using the answer line, complete each item below with the correct word from the box.

a. **accompany**	b. **desperate**	c. **determine**	d. **dispose of**	e. **evident**
f. **preserve**	g. **pursue**	h. **rejection**	i. **restore**	j. **scarce**

_______________ 1. If you are ___ for food, that means you are in great need of it.

_______________ 2. When we say that something is ___, we mean that it can be clearly seen or clearly understood.

_______________ 3. Do you like ketchup to ___ your french fries, or do you prefer them plain?

_______________ 4. The opposite of "plentiful" is "___."

_______________ 5. There are several ways to ___ things you no longer want: put them in the garbage, recycle them, or give or sell them to someone who can use them.

_______________ 6. The opposite of "acceptance" is "___."

_______________ 7. To _____ a piece of furniture, protect it from too much heat, sun, and moisture.

_______________ 8. A good way to ___ which twin is which is to look for the mole on Beth's forehead.

_______________ 9. Many athletes ___ an Olympic medal by practicing hours a day for years, but only a few athletes can actually win one.

_______________ 10. To _____ an old table, you must begin by removing all of the old varnish and paint.

Sentence Sheck 2

Using the answer lines, complete each item below with **two** words from the box.

____
_______________ 1–2. It is ___ that this old movie theater has been very well taken care of — the original seats and wallpaper have been ___d since 1924.

____
_______________ 3–4. Jill wants to be a zookeeper, but since such jobs are ___, she may need to ___ another kind of work.

____
_______________ 5–6. The woman was ___ for money, so she decided to sell her grandmother's diamond ring. She was disappointed when the jeweler ___d that the diamond was a cheap imitation.

____
_______________ 7–8. The owners of the old car are trying to decide if they will ___ it with new parts and a lot of body work, or ___ it by giving it away.

____
_______________ 9–10. I offered to ___ my friend to the tryout for the play, thinking that if she did not get the part, she might need help in dealing with the ___.

➢ *Related Words*

Once you learn a new word, you can more easily understand many related words. Below are ten words related to the core words of this chapter. Use their definitions to help you write in the word that best completes each item.

Word	Definition
a. **desperately**, *adverb*	In a way that shows a great need or desire
b. **disposal**, *noun*	The act of getting rid of something
c. **evidence**, *noun*	Something that helps prove a fact or belief; proof
d. **pursuit**, *noun*	The act of seeking or chasing
e. **reject**, *verb*	Refuse

______________ 1. The ___ found by firefighters — matches and a gasoline can — prove that someone set the fire on purpose.

______________ 2. The runner tried ___ to be the first to cross the finish line, but he failed by inches.

______________ 3. Our silly dog spends hours in ___ of her own tail — which, of course, she never catches.

______________ 4. Why did Amy ___ the job that was offered to her? Did she take another one instead?

______________ 5. ___ of nuclear waste is very difficult — people don't want such dangerous garbage near them.

Word	Definition
f. **accompaniment**, *noun*	A musical part that provides the background for a soloist
g. **determination**, *noun*	The act of finding out something
h. **evidently**, *adverb*	Obviously; clearly
i. **preservation**, *noun*	Protection; the act of keeping something safe or in good condition
j. **scarcity**, *noun*	A shortage

______________ 6. After a ___ of just exactly why the car is squealing, the mechanics can figure out how to repair it.

______________ 7. Because of freezes in Florida and California, there is a ___ of oranges this year.

______________ 8. The only ___ to the jazz singer was played on the flute.

______________ 9. If the town doesn't start working on the ___ of some open space, soon there won't be a spot that isn't covered with a house or shopping center.

______________ 10. Jerome and his cousin Theo go everywhere together; ___, they are very good friends.

➢ *Word Parts*

A. One meaning of the suffix *-ly* is "in a certain way."

Examples: *desperate* — in great need
desperately — in a way that shows great need
grateful — thankful
gratefully — in a thankful way

On each answer line, write the word from the box that means the same as the *italicized* words.

a. **angrily**	b. **deliberately°**	c. **desperately**
d. **excessively°**	e. **skillfully**	

__________ 1. Eva *in a deliberate° way* stuck her foot out as her little brother came by. As he fell, he yelled, "Hey, you did that on purpose!"

__________ 2. The doctor sewed up the wound so *in a skillful way* that it did not even leave a scar.

__________ 3. I guess I have been spending *in an excessive way* on clothes and eating out; I haven't saved a cent for the last year.

__________ 4. Many neighbors stayed up all night, searching *in a desperate way* for the missing child.

__________ 5. The principal said to the class *in an angry way,* "There's no good reason for such rude behavior toward a substitute teacher."

B. One meaning of the prefix *re-* is "back."

Examples: *reflect* — to bend light back
recall — to call back to mind; remember

On each answer line, write the word from the box that best completes the item.

f. **recall**	g. **reflect**	h. **remove**
i. **repay**	j. **restore**	

__________ 6. To ___ this old lamp, you'll need to put in new electrical wiring.

__________ 7. When I get my next paycheck, I will ___ the ten dollars you lent me.

__________ 8. I remember the man's face, but I cannot ___ his name.

__________ 9. The truck's headlights hit my rearview mirror, which ___ed the light right into my eyes.

__________ 10. "Please ___ your hand from my car," said the young man.

➣ *Final Check*

Read the passages carefully. Then fill in each blank with the word that best fits the context.

A. Fixing Up Furniture

a. **determine**	b. **dispose**	c. **evident**
d. **preserve**	e. **restore**	

I feel proud when I can fix up furniture that other people have (1)__________d of. Rather than spend a lot on new furniture, I like the challenge° of taking an old chair thrown out by a relative or an ugly bureau I've found in a neighbor's trash pile and trying to (2)__________ it to its original condition. I often find a beautiful piece of furniture hidden under many coats of paint or varnish. At first it is hard to (3)__________ how good or bad the piece underneath really is. I must carefully remove the old paint or varnish. If it becomes (4)__________ that the quality of the piece of furniture is good, I sand it until it is smooth. Then I stain it to bring out the wood's natural lines and colors. Finally, I apply new varnish to (5)__________ the wood from damage by water or heat. Fixing other people's "junk" has been an inexpensive way for me to get some beautiful furniture.

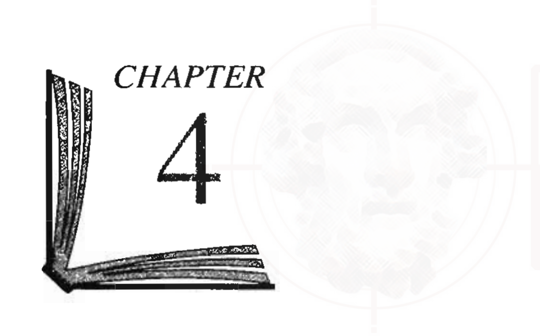
B. Barbara's Date with Her Cousin

f. **accompany**	g. **desperate**	h. **pursue**
i. **rejection**	j. **scarce**	

Barbara can finally laugh about the time twenty years ago when she was so (6)__________ for a date that she paid her cousin twenty-five dollars to go with her to the senior prom. She admits that dates were pretty (7)__________ for her in high school. However, when the prom tickets first went on sale, Barbara hoped that some handsome fellow would fall for her charms and ask her to the prom, and maybe even ask her to go steady. It didn't happen.

Back then, people didn't think it was very "ladylike" behavior to actively (8)__________ a date with a boy, but Barbara really wanted to go to the prom. Despite her fear of (9)__________, she got up her nerve to ask Gary. He already had a date. So she asked Emilio and then Chuck. They also said no.

One week before the prom, she called her cousin. He said, "Okay, but it will cost you." He said ten dollars was for being willing to (10)__________ her to the dance and fifteen dollars was for not telling anyone at the prom that they were related.



CHAPTER 4

abundant	**distinct**
betray	**exaggerate**
comparison	**inhabit**
demonstrate	**neutral**
dispute	**reduction**

Ten Words in Context

In the space provided, write the letter of the meaning closest to that of each **boldfaced** word. Use the context of the sentences to help you figure out each word's meaning.

1 **abundant**
/ə'bʌndənt/
– *adjective*

- Our apple tree bore such an **abundant** crop this year that we'll have plenty of applesauce all winter.
- Mom's energy is so **abundant** that the rest of us can't keep up with her. After a day's work, she'll bike ten miles and then say, "Let's shoot a few baskets before dinner!"

___*Abundant* means a. different. b. great. c. reasonable.

2 **betray**
/bɪ'treɪ/
– *verb*

- The prisoners refused to **betray** their country by telling its secrets.
- I didn't mean to **betray** my brother by telling our parents he was using drugs — I wanted to help him.

___*Betray* means a. to turn against. b. to give aid to. c. to argue with.

3 **comparison**
/kəm'pærɪsən/
– *noun*

- I decided which car to buy after making a **comparison** of all the cars in my price range.
- A **comparison** of Marty's two wives makes his second wife seem like a saint.

___*Comparison* means a. check of what is alike and different. b. argument. c. explanation.

4 **demonstrate**
/'demənstreɪt/
– *verb*

- I asked the salesman to **demonstrate** how to use the camera, but it was clear he didn't know how.
- When the new copying machine arrives in our office, someone who knows how to use it will **demonstrate** how all its features work.

___*Demonstrate* means a. to remember. b. to imagine. c. to show.

5 **dispute**
/dɪs'pju:t/
– *noun*

- My **dispute** with my brother about who would get the last piece of pie was settled when our father ate it.
- Business at the store was so slow that the salespeople had a **dispute** over who would get the next customer.

___*Dispute* means a. answer. b. disagreement. c. explanation.

6 **distinct**
/dɪs'tɪŋkt/
– *adjective*

- The faces of the people in the faded old photo were not **distinct** — we couldn't identify anyone.
- Although the two bowls of onion dip looked the same, there was a **distinct** difference in their taste.

___*Distinct* means a. definite. b. healthy. c. hard to notice.

7 **exaggerate**
/ɪgˈzædʒəreɪt/
– verb

- Dad, reminding us not to stretch the truth, always jokes, "I've told you a million times never to **exaggerate**!"
- I didn't **exaggerate** when I called Randall a musical genius. He really does play the guitar amazingly well.

___ *Exaggerate* means a. to ask questions. b. to overstate. c. to explain.

8 **inhabit**
/ɪnˈhæbɪt/
– verb

- Six billion people **inhabit** the Earth.
- Bats often **inhabit** the attics of houses, barns, and other buildings.

___ *Inhabit* means a. to show. b. to live in. c. to check.

9 **neutral**
/ˈnjuːtrəl/
– adjective

- If you ever go to a marriage counselor, don't expect him or her to take sides in your problems with your spouse. A counselor must remain **neutral.**
- Switzerland has been a **neutral** country since 1648. It doesn't participate or support either side in wars.

___ *Neutral* means a. clear. b. not taking sides. c. not loyal.

10 **reduction**
/rɪˈdʌkʃən/
– noun

- When our company offered to pay us for sick time we didn't use, there was a sudden **reduction** in the number of sick days taken.
- It seems everyone who runs for public office promises a **reduction** in taxes.

___ *Reduction* means a. order. b. quarrel. c. cut.

Matching Words with Definitions

Following are definitions of the ten words. **Print** each word next to its definition. If you look closely at each word in context, you will be able to figure out its meaning.

1. ________________ To live in
2. ________________ Very plentiful; more than enough
3. ________________ The act of checking or judging how two or more things are alike or different
4. ________________ To say that something is larger or greater than it really is; overstate
5. ________________ Clear; obvious; easy to see or notice
6. ________________ Not taking sides in a quarrel
7. ________________ An argument; a quarrel
8. ________________ To be disloyal to; turn against
9. ________________ A decrease; cutback
10. ________________ To explain or teach by showing

CAUTION: Do not go any further until you are sure the above answers are correct. Then you can use the definitions to help you in the following practices. Your goal is eventually to know the words well enough so that you don't need to check the definitions at all.

➢ *Sentence Check 1*

Using the answer line, complete each item below with the correct word from the box.

a. **abundant**	b. **betray**	c. **comparison**	d. **demonstrate**	e. **dispute**
f. **distinct**	g. **exaggerate**	h. **inhabit**	i. **neutral**	j. **reduction**

________ 1. If someone's new job pays less than the old job, he or she has taken a ___ in pay.

________ 2. Benedict Arnold was an American officer who secretly helped the British during the American Revolution; he is remembered as a man who ___ed his country.

________ 3. You ___ a point when you overstate it, as in saying, "I'm dying of hunger."

________ 4. We had such an ___ crop of tomatoes this year that we had enough to give to our neighbors.

________ 5. If you want to remain friends with two people who are quarreling, it is best to stay ___ and keep out of the fight.

________ 6. A ___ of our backgrounds and interests revealed we had a lot in common.

________ 7. The uncooperative salesman refused to ___ how to use the VCR, saying, "Just read the manual and figure it out yourself."

________ 8. Even though I was only 3 at the time, I have a ___ memory of the first time I saw the ocean.

________ 9. The people who ___ Canada are called Canadians.

________ 10. When we say that two people had a ___, we mean that their fight consisted of words, not punches.

➢ *Sentence Check 2*

Using the answer lines, complete each item below with **two** words from the box.

____
________ 1–2. My roommates are having a ___ over whether to paint the kitchen yellow or tan. I'm remaining ___; I don't care what color it is.

____
________ 3–4. There has been a ___ in crime in our city this year. In ___ with last year, far fewer crimes were committed.

____
________ 5–6. I'll admit that ants were ___ at our picnic, but let's not ___. There really were not a trillion of them.

____
________ 7–8. Although I'd never sent E-mail on a computer before, Corey ___d how it works so clearly that I now have a ___ idea of how to do it myself.

____
________ 9–10. Homeless people secretly ___ed the abandoned building, but when someone ___ed them and told the police, they were thrown out.

Related Words

Once you learn a new word, you can more easily understand many related words. Below are ten words related to the core words of this chapter. Use their definitions to help you write in the word that best completes each item.

Word	Definition
a. **compare**, *verb*	To check on what is the same and different
b. **demonstration**, *noun*	An act of showing; presentation
c. **distinctly**, *adverb*	Clearly
d. **inhabitant**, *noun*.	Someone who lives in a particular place; resident
e. **reduce**, *verb*	To make smaller or fewer

______________________ 1. The juggling class began with a ___ by the instructor, who juggled six cups and saucers, a teapot, and three muffins.

______________________ 2. Tokyo, Japan, has the largest population of any city in the world — over 26 million ___s.

______________________ 3. I ___ remember asking you to buy bread and milk on your way home.

______________________ 4. If you ___ what it costs to serve homemade foods and prepared foods, you will see that you can save money by doing your own cooking.

______________________ 5. Scientists are telling Americans to ___ the amount of fat in our diets. They say we eat much more fat than is healthy.

Word	Definition
f. **abundance**, *noun*	A great or plentiful supply
g. **betrayal**, *noun*	Lack of loyalty
h. **disputed**, *adjective*	Being debated, or argued, about; being a subject of debate
i. **exaggeration**, *noun*	An overstatement; act of stating that something is larger or greater than it actually is
j. **habitat**, *noun*	The place where an animal or plant lives or grows

______________________ 6. After the holidays, Elena complained, "I've gained a ton!" This was a slight ___, since she had actually gained three pounds.

______________________ 7. "I have never experienced such ___," said Tom, after finding out that his best friend was having an affair with his wife. "It may be impossible to restore° my faith in either of them."

______________________ 8. The tropical areas of Africa and Asia are the elephant's natural ___. We need to preserve° those areas so that elephants will have places to live.

______________________ 9. The death penalty and abortion are two hotly ___ topics in the United States today.

______________________ 10. There was an ___ of food at the party: platters were heaped high with cold cuts, salads, breads, and desserts.

Synonyms and Antonyms

A. Synonyms. Write the letter of the word or phrase that most nearly means the **same** as each boldfaced word.

____ 1. **betray**

a. encourage
b. annoy
c. escape
d. be disloyal

____ 2. **comparison**

a. thoughts and feelings
b. check of how things are alike or different
c. questions and answers
d. time and effort

____ 3. **demonstrate**

a. show
b. confuse
c. entertain
d. judge

____ 4. **dispute**

a. argument
b. agreement
c. fact
d. condition

____ 5. **inhabit**

a. go away from
b. approach
c. live in
d. explore

B. Antonyms. Write the letter of the word or phrase that most nearly means the **opposite** of each boldfaced word.

____ 6. **abundant**

a. not enough
b. effective
c. lucky
d. great

____ 7. **distinct**

a. quiet
b. not constant
c. large
d. not clear

____ 8. **exaggerate**

a. admire
b. destroy
c. understate
d. defend

____ 9. **neutral**

a. unusual
b. taking sides
c. frightened
d. possible

____ 10. **reduction**

a. comment
b. increase
c. agreement
d. answer

➢ *Final Check*

Read the passages carefully. Then fill in each blank with the word that best fits the context.

A. The Vacuum-Cleaner Salesman

a. **abundant**	b. **demonstrate**	c. **distinct**
d. **exaggerate**	e. **reduction**	

I'll never forget the day a salesman (1)____________________d his vacuum cleaner on my living room rug. I know some salespeople (2)____________________ their product's good qualities, so I didn't believe everything he said. But I let him show me what his machine could do.

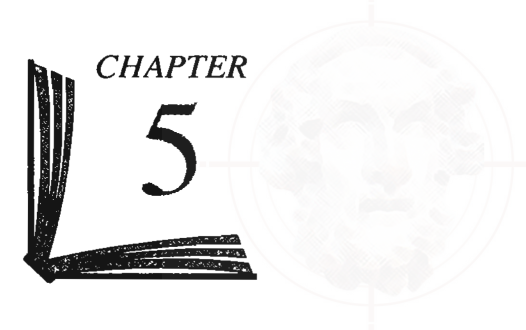
The first thing he did was deliberately° wipe his muddy feet on my rug. Next, he dumped an (3)____________________ amount of ashes onto it. Then he vacuumed the mess up. In no time, there was a difference between the rest of the rug and the part he had dirtied and then cleaned. A clear light stripe now ran down the middle of my rug. The machine was great. He told me how lucky I was to have the chance to buy it then, because of a great (4)____________________ in the price. Sadly, I had to tell him that even the lower price was too high for me. He then quickly thanked me and left.

Then I realized that he hadn't finished cleaning up all of the mess he had made. So I used my own vacuum cleaner, which did not do a very good job. As a result, I'm reminded of the frustration° of that day every time I walk through my living room. It still has a (5)____________________ light stripe right down the middle.

B. Peace at Last

f. **betray**	g. **comparison**	h. **dispute**
i. **inhabit**	j. **neutral**	

My new apartment is so nice and quiet in (6)____________________ with my last one. In my old building, the people who (7)____________________ed the apartments on both sides of me were always having (8)____________________s. For example, the woman in 401 and the man in 403 would argue all the time about politics. Once she yelled that she had trusted him to keep her secrets, but that he had (9)____________________ed her by telling everyone in the building. He then loudly insisted that she was the one with the big mouth. In addition, his wife sometimes screamed at the woman for flirting with her husband. Although they tried to get me to take sides, I remained completely (10)____________________. I don't know who was right or wrong. I just know that the excessive° number of noisy arguments was too much for me to bear, and I'm glad to be out of there.





aggravate	intentional
cease	interference
coincide	obnoxious
considerable	unstable
humane	utilize

Ten Words in Context

In the space provided, write the letter of the meaning closest to that of each **boldfaced** word. Use the context of the sentences to help you figure out each word's meaning.

1 aggravate /ˈægrəveɪt/ – *verb*

- If you walk on your sprained ankle, you'll only **aggravate** the injury: the pain and swelling will get worse.
- If your next-door neighbors hate your dog, it's a difficult situation — so don't **aggravate** the problem by walking the dog on their lawn.

___ *Aggravate* means a. to make use of. b. to make worse. c. to create.

2 cease /siːs/ – *verb*

- After the police warned him twice, our landlord **ceased** burning trash in the backyard, an illegal activity in our town.
- When the snowfall finally **ceased**, we went out to shovel the driveway.

___ *Cease* means a. to repeat. b. to start. c. to quit.

3 coincide /ˌkəʊɪnˈsaɪd/ – *verb*

- My best friend from high school and I have moved to different states. We try to make our visits to our hometown **coincide** so that we can see each other.
- My roommate is getting married on the same day as my cousin. I wish the weddings were not going to **coincide** because I'd really like to go to both.

___ *Coincide* means a. to happen at the same time. b. to be stopped. c. to be interesting.

4 considerable /kənˈsɪdərəbl/ – *adjective*

- After two hours and **considerable** effort, I finally found Vernon's apartment.
- Elena loves gardening, so she spends a **considerable** amount of time caring for flowers, vegetables, and herbs.

___ *Considerable* means a. too little. b. gentle. c. quite a bit.

5 humane /hjuːˈmeɪn/ – *adjective*

- When our cat developed a fatal blood disease, we didn't want her to suffer. We felt it was more **humane** to have her painlessly "put to sleep."
- For years, mentally retarded people were often poorly cared for in large institutions. Happily, many now receive more **humane** treatment in small group homes.

___ *Humane* means a. wasteful. b. fast. c. caring.

6 intentional /ɪnˈtenʃənl/ – *adjective*

- The police believe the fire was **intentional**, although they don't know why someone would purposely burn down the library.
- I know I'm an hour late, but it wasn't **intentional**. A huge traffic accident held me up.

___ *Intentional* means a. important. b. planned. c. late.

7 interference /ˌɪntəˈfɪərəns/ – *noun*

- Because the street workers outside our classroom window were such an **interference**, the class was moved to the library.
- I'm very fond of my mother-in-law, but I do not like her **interference** in arguments between me and my wife.

___ *Interference* means a. help. b. getting in the way. c. silence.

8 obnoxious /ɒbˈnɒkʃəs/ – *adjective*

- The children visiting the chicken farm held their noses because of the **obnoxious** smell.
- I won't go to the party if Lester is there. He always makes himself **obnoxious** by insulting and making fun of people.

___ *Obnoxious* means a. not interesting. b. popular. c. not pleasant.

9 unstable /ˌʌnˈsteɪbl/ – *adjective*

- The ladder felt so **unstable** that I was afraid to climb any higher than the third step.
- The young man's personality was **unstable**. One minute he seemed quiet and satisfied, and the next minute he was angry about something.

___ *Unstable* means a. not steady. b. useful. c. easy to break.

10 utilize /ˈjuːtɪlaɪz/ – *verb*

- Don't throw bread away just because it's stale. Stale bread can be **utilized** to make bread crumbs and croutons.
- Last summer, Cindy **utilized** her swimming skills as a camp lifeguard.

___ *Utilize* means a. to sell. b. to replace. c. to use.

Matching Words with Definitions

Following are definitions of the ten words. **Print** each word next to its definition. If you look closely at each word in context, you will be able to figure out its meaning.

1. ____________________ Very unpleasant; distasteful; disgusting
2. ____________________ To stop; discontinue
3. ____________________ Unsteady; wobbly; not reliable
4. ____________________ Done on purpose; planned
5. ____________________ To make worse
6. ____________________ Kind; sympathetic; merciful; gentle
7. ____________________ To happen at the same time
8. ____________________ Rather great; rather large
9. ____________________ The act of getting in the way of something; meddling in someone else's business; something that gets in the way
10. ____________________ To make use of; put to use, especially to good use

CAUTION: Do not go any further until you are sure the above answers are correct. Then you can use the definitions to help you in the following practices. Your goal is eventually to know the words well enough so that you don't need to check the definitions at all.

➣ *Sentence Check 1*

Using the answer line, complete each item below with the correct word from the box.

a. **aggravate**	b. **cease**	c. **coincide**	d. **considerable**	e. **humane**
f. **intentional**	g. **interference**	h. **obnoxious**	i. **unstable**	j. **utilize**

________ 1. It's no wonder the vase fell over; the flowers were so top-heavy that the whole arrangement was ___.

________ 2. My brother is glad he'll be able to ___ his skills as a mechanic in his new job at a garage.

________ 3. Surprisingly, going to bed and taking it easy can actually ___ back pain. Gentle movement is often more helpful.

________ 4. A ___ amount of time is the opposite of a rather small amount of time.

________ 5. You may feel that slurping with straws is ___, but my kids don't find it disgusting at all.

________ 6. The young man was charged with arson — the ___ setting of a harmful fire.

________ 7. The two funerals will ___; that is, they will take place on the same day.

________ 8. My nosy neighbor calls what she does just "taking a healthy interest in people's lives," but I call what she does "___."

________ 9. It really isn't ___ to give small children chicks and baby ducks as presents — the poor little birds are almost sure to die soon.

________ 10. The opposite of "begin" is ___.

➣ *Sentence Check 2*

Using the answer lines, complete each item below with **two** words from the box.

________ ________ 1–2. "No pain, no gain" is bad advice when it comes to sports injuries. You can easily ___ an injury by playing before the pain has ___d.

________ ________ 3–4. If a couple's marriage seems ___, family members may try to get involved. But ___ from relatives sometimes does more harm than good.

________ ________ 5–6. It may take ___ effort to get along with an ___ coworker, but learning how to deal with difficult people is a valuable skill.

________ ________ 7–8. Animal-rights activists say it is not right to ___ cats, dogs, and monkeys in medical experiments. However, many researchers argue that their treatment of the animals is ___.

________ ________ 9–10. The vocabulary skills class and the study skills class ___ this semester. Scheduling them for the same day and time probably wasn't ___, but students who wanted to take them both are annoyed.

Related Words

Once you learn a new word, you can more easily understand many related words. Below are ten words related to the core words of this chapter. Use their definitions to help you write in the word that best completes each item.

a. **aggravation**, *noun*	A worsening
b. **coincidence**, *noun*	A striking chance happening of events at the same time, as if they had been planned
c. **considerably**, *adverb*	To a rather large extent; in a rather large amount
d. **humanitarian**, *noun*	A person who helps further human welfare
e. **ceaseless**, *adjective*	Constant; never stopping

_______________ 1. When Tania picked up her old friend at the airport, they were both so excited about seeing one another that they couldn't stop talking — the car was filled with their ___ chatter until they reached home.

_______________ 2. If you won the lottery, would you be a ___ and give some of the money to charity? Or — be honest — would you keep it all for yourself?

_______________ 3. The patient's refusal to take his medicine led to an ___ of his illness — in fact, he nearly died.

_______________ 4. My husband is one of those people who get the blues over the Christmas holidays, but his spirits brighten ___ after New Year's Day.

_______________ 5. My roommate and I discovered a funny ___: our mothers had been roommates at the hospital where we were both born.

f. **intention**, *noun*	A plan to do something
g. **interfere**, *verb*	To become involved in other people's business
h. **noxious**, *adjective*	Very harmful to health
i. **stable**, *adjective*	Steady; reliable
j. **utility**, *noun*	Usefulness; the quality of serving a use or purpose

_______________ 6. To make the ladder more ___ while Luis climbed up to the roof, Andy and I held onto the sides.

_______________ 7. The children had to be taken from the school building quickly when ___ fumes began escaping from the furnace. Luckily, none of them got sick.

_______________ 8. The old saying "The road to hell is paved with good ___s" means that just planning to do good things is not enough; we must also do them.

_______________ 9. We purchase most of our household items for their ___ — to sit on, to cook with, and so on. However, we buy works of art for their beauty, not their usefulness.

_______________ 10. If children are quarreling, should parents ___? Or is it better to stay out of the quarrel and let kids work things out for themselves?

➢ *Analogies*

Each item below starts with a pair of words in CAPITAL LETTERS. For each item, figure out the relationship between these two words. Then decide which of the choices (*a*, *b*, *c*, or *d*) expresses a similar relationship. Write the letter of your choice on the answer line. (All the repeated words in these items are from this unit.)

____ 1. AGGRAVATE : WORSEN ::

a. improve : make better
b. improve : make worse
c. heal : injure
d. raise : lower

____ 2. CEASE : BEGIN ::

a. continue : go on
b. stop : quit
c. stop : start
d. hurry : rush

____ 3. PRESERVE° : FURNITURE ::

a. restore° : repair
b. chair : furniture
c. find : lose
d. analyze° : problem

____ 4. OBNOXIOUS : PLEASANT ::

a. harmful : unpleasant
b. annoying : irritating
c. annoying : nice
d. pleasure : enjoyment

____ 5. UTILIZE : TOOL ::

a. catch : run
b. shaky : wobbly
c. ship : car
d. swing : bat

____ 6. UNSTABLE : STEADY ::

a. large : big
b. evident° : unclear
c. abundant° : plentiful
d. busy : happy

____ 7. INTENTIONAL : ON PURPOSE ::

a. untrue : false
b. accidental : on purpose
c. planned : prevented
d. hoped for : feared

____ 8. REJECTION° : ACCEPTANCE ::

a. hour : time
b. child : children
c. school : college
d. contrast° : similarity

____ 9. INTERFERENCE : ASSISTANCE ::

a. reduction°: decrease
b. garbage : bag
c. teacher : subject
d. dispute° : agreement

____ 10. SCARCE° : GOLD ::

a. fragile : glass
b. new : old
c. diamond : ruby
d. excessive° : deliberate°

Final Check

Read the passages carefully. Then fill in each blank with the word that best fits the context.

A. Study Skills to the Rescue!

a. **aggravate**	b. **coincide**	c. **considerable**
d. **interference**	e. **utilize**	

College students say that one of their biggest headaches is what to do when several exams and assignments (1)____________________; for example, when they have an exam and a quiz the same week that a paper and a report are due. To deal with this situation, don't panic — that will only (2)________________ your problem. Instead, (3)________________ some study skills that will make you a better manager of your time. First, you can get (4)____________________ help simply by planning well. Figure out what will take the most time; probably the exam will need more study time than the quiz, and a long report might take more time than a short paper. Setting aside the right amounts of time will give you a sense of control. Second, be sure you get the most out of the time you've planned. Find a quiet place to work, and don't allow any (5)____________________ from your friends or roommates, TV, radio, or the CD player. And third? Well, try adding your own ideas to the list. The more you add, the more self-confident you'll feel.

B. How to Control Children

f. **cease**	g. **humane**	h. **intentional**
i. **obnoxious**	j. **unstable**	

For many years, there was little question about how to treat children who misbehaved — they were hit, sometimes beaten. That seemed natural and suitable° to parents, to teachers, and maybe even to the children. In our own time, though, many people have tried to find more (6)____________________ methods, gentle ways to help children learn self-control. Of course, they recognize that children's behavior is often (7)______________________. Kids can be noisy, rude, and destructive. Although that behavior isn't always done on purpose, sometimes it is (8)____________________. But many adults believe that spanking and other physical violence won't make a child's bad behavior (9)____________________. Indeed, hitting children may make them act even worse, as they learn to meet violence with more violence. Their willpower becomes weak and (10)____________________; in other words, their ability to control themselves is shaky, rather than strong and firm. Some adults still believe that spanking is the best way to teach children, but this other approach certainly deserves consideration.

UNIT ONE: Review

The box at the right lists twenty-five words from Unit One. Using the clues at the bottom of the page, fill in these words to complete the puzzle that follows.

accompany
attitude
betray
cease
challenge
coincide
critical
deliberate
dispute
evident
fertile
fragile
humane
indicate
inhabit
neutral
preference
preserve
reduction
rejection
scarce
solitary
surplus
unstable
utilize

ACROSS

1. To live in
4. Rare; hard to get; not enough to meet demand
6. A decrease; cutback
12. To protect; keep in good condition
13. To show; serve as a sign or signal
15. Done on purpose
17. Extra; more than what is used or needed
18. Not taking sides in a quarrel
19. A test of one's abilities
20. Happening or done alone
21. To happen at the same time
22. Unsteady; wobbly; not reliable
23. Producing or able to produce much fruit, large crops, or many children

DOWN

2. A point of view; state of mind; way of thinking or feeling
3. To be disloyal to; turn against
5. A saying "no" (to a request or desire); refusal
7. To make use of; put to use, especially to good use
8. Disapproving; tending to find fault
9. Easily broken or damaged
10. Obvious; clear
11. Kind; sympathetic; merciful; gentle
14. Choice; first choice; something preferred
15. An argument; a quarrel
16. To go along with; be together with
21. To stop; discontinue

UNIT ONE: Test 1

PART A

Choose the word that best completes each item and write it in the space provided.

____________________ 1. A bucket of paint can ___ a room's looks.

a. transform b. accompany c. challenge d. utilize

____________________ 2. Jenna was afraid to climb up the ___ ladder — it was too wobbly.

a. scarce b. distinct c. neutral d. unstable

____________________ 3. Kwan thought my not inviting her to my party was a ___ insult. In reality, her invitation slipped under a book, so it never was mailed.

a. deliberate b. suitable c. humane d. scarce

____________________ 4. Don't scratch a mosquito bite! You'll only ___ the itching and end up feeling even worse.

a. analyze b. aggravate c. indicate d. utilize

____________________ 5. My ___ aim in going to college is to get a good job when I graduate, but I hope to have a good time while I'm there as well.

a. abundant b. obnoxious c. principal d. desperate

____________________ 6. It took a long time for doctors to ___ what Felicia was allergic to, but they finally figured out that it was her lipstick.

a. utilize b. preserve c. determine c. restore

____________________ 7. After hours of ___ work at my desk, I am ready to spend some time with other people.

a. abundant b. solitary c. humane d. dependent

____________________ 8. My grandmother's old china doll is much too ___ for my daughter to play with; it would soon be broken.

a. fragile b. suitable c. distinct c. scarce

____________________ 9. "Your secret is safe with me," said the handsome prince to the fair maiden. "I swear I will never ___ you!"

a. restore b. demonstrate c. preserve d. betray

____________________ 10. The students in history class noticed a ___ odor coming from the chemistry lab across the hall. The odor smelled like a mixture of rotten eggs and gasoline.

a. suitable b. scarce c. fertile d. peculiar

(Continues on next page)

_______________ 11. It is ___ that Wayne is interested in Shawna; he can't stop looking at her.

a. humane b. evident c. dependent d. critical

_______________ 12. Animals that ___ a desert region are able to live there because they can go a long time without water.

a. analyze b. indicate c. dispose of d. inhabit

_______________ 13. A salesperson came to our office to ___ how the new copier worked, but he didn't explain very clearly how to use the machine.

a. preserve b. restore c. demonstrate d. utilize

PART B

Write **C** if the italicized word is used **correctly**. Write **I** if the word is used **incorrectly**.

____ 14. Suddenly, the music *ceased*, and the room was very quiet.

____ 15. That jigsaw puzzle is a *challenge* because it is too easy. It's meant for very young children and has only six pieces.

____ 16. Because of *interference* by a fan who ran onto the playing field, the game was temporarily stopped by a referee.

____ 17. Punishments for criminals in the Middle Ages were *humane*. They included being burned alive, beaten to death, branded, and torn apart.

____ 18. Maya's elderly parents are too *dependent* on her. They constantly call her for help and advice.

____ 19. The bare, dry, stony fields look very *fertile*.

____ 20. Raspberries are so *abundant* in our city that when you can find them at all, they cost as much as five or six dollars for a tiny box.

____ 21. My *preference* is to go to an Italian restaurant tonight because I dislike spaghetti and pizza.

____ 22. The notice in the airplane said, "Seat cushions can be *utilized* for flotation" — or, in other words, you can use the cushions to float on if the plane crashes in water.

____ 23. The teenagers on the subway were especially *obnoxious* — they gave up their seats so some elderly people and a pregnant woman could sit down.

____ 24. Stone fences are common on New England farms because stones in the fields are so *scarce*.

____ 25. Teenage boys are sometimes nervous about asking a girl for a date because they fear *rejection*.

Score (Number correct) ________ × 4 = ________%

Enter your score above and in the vocabulary performance chart on the inside back cover of the book.

UNIT ONE: Test 2

PART A

Complete each item with a word from the box. Use each word once.

a. **accompany**	b. **analyze**	c. **category**	d. **coincide**	e. **comparison**
f. **desperate**	g. **dispose of**	h. **intentional**	i. **neutral**	j. **reduction**
k. **restore**	l. **suitable**	m. **surplus**		

________ 1. The man who stepped on my foot on the bus said, "Sorry! It wasn't ___. I didn't mean to do it!"

________ 2. Darin's vegetable garden grew so well and produced so much that he didn't know what to do with the ___ tomatoes and zucchinis.

________ 3. A ___ between the two jobs didn't make it much easier for Marnie to decide; one paid better, but the other was more interesting.

________ 4. Why do Mid-Autumn Festival and National Day ___ in some years, while in other years they are weeks apart rather than at the same time?

________ 5. My middle child hates to fight. When his brother and sister get into a quarrel, he always stays ___.

________ 6. Americans think too much about weight ___. There is more to life than just losing weight!

________ 7. The town will ___ traffic patterns to find out if more traffic lights are needed.

________ 8. Some psychologists think there are two types of people: type A's, who are hard-working and uptight, and type B's, who are relaxed and easygoing. Which ___ do you belong in?

________ 9. If a poor man is ___ for money to buy medicine for his sick wife, do you think he should steal?

________ 10. Don't ___ the comic section of the Sunday paper. Save it and use it as wrapping paper — it's colorful and fun!

________ 11. When Josie had a tooth pulled, she asked Mark to ___ her to the dentist and see that she got home all right afterward.

________ 12. Cut-off jeans might be ___ to wear to a ball game, but they would be out of place at a funeral.

________ 13. The town wants to ___ the old firehouse instead of tearing it down and building a new one.

(Continues on next page)

PART B

Write **C** if the italicized word is used **correctly**. Write **I** if the word is used **incorrectly**.

_____14. Ronda has an unusual *attitude* towards weekends, vacations, and holidays; she doesn't like them much and would just as soon go to work every day of the year.

_____15. Corey's fame as a football player is *considerable* — nobody has ever heard of him.

_____16. Imagine my *frustration* when I learned I had earned straight A's for the semester!

_____17. Helen is far too *critical* of her husband. She adores him and never finds fault with him no matter how badly he treats her.

_____18. To *preserve* the seat covers in his car, Denny had slipcovers put on. Then he put plastic over the slipcovers. Then he spread old sheets over the plastic.

_____19. Denny's concern for his car's seat covers seems to be *excessive*. Who ever heard of using so many layers of covers at once?

_____20. The old photograph was so *distinct* that the faces of the people in it were just a blur.

_____21. "If you get robbed on the street," said the police officer, "never try to *pursue* the thief yourself. Call us and let us do the chasing!"

_____22. There is a real *contrast* between the twins. They look so much alike that sometimes even their mother can't tell them apart.

_____23. Don't *exaggerate* when you fill out a job application. If you were a store clerk, for instance, don't say you were the manager.

_____24. When President Calvin Coolidge wanted to *indicate* that he was not a candidate for reelection, he said, "I do not choose to run."

_____25. Lupe and Jorge are such lovebirds that they agree about everything, so they have one *dispute* after another.

Score (Number correct) ________ × 4 = ________%

Enter your score above and in the vocabulary performance chart on the inside back cover of the book.

UNIT ONE: Test 3

PART A: Synonyms

In the space provided, write the letter of the choice that is most nearly the **same** in meaning as the **boldfaced** word.

____ 1. **accompany** a) go b) seek c) figure out d) go with

____ 2. **analyze** a) worry about b) argue about c) study d) change

____ 3. **attitude** a) height b) disappointment c) point of view d) skill

____ 4. **category** a) type b) book c) difference d) check for similarities and differences

____ 5. **challenge** a) quarrel b) something needing effort c) change d) use

____ 6. **coincide** a) change b) live in c) happen at the same time d) show

____ 7. **comparison** a) check for what is alike and different b) increase c) feeling of anger d) first choice

____ 8. **considerable** a) unpleasant b) typical c) quite large d) producing much

____ 9. **critical** a) kind b) hard to get c) disapproving d) harmful

____10. **demonstrate** a) show b) get rid of c) turn against d) overstate

____11. **desperate** a) relying on others b) in great need c) clear d) alone

____12. **determine** a) prevent b) explain c) figure out d) protect

____13. **evident** a) hard to get b) fitting c) clear d) too much

____14. **fertile** a) careful b) helpful c) fearful d) fruitful

____15. **indicate** a) disapprove of b) show c) turn against d) protect

____16. **inhabit** a) make a habit of b) seek c) live in d) leave

____17. **interference** a) getting in the way b) difference c) decrease d) refusing

____18. **preference** a) first choice b) disappointment c) extra d) test

____19. **preserve** a) teach b) turn against c) destroy d) protect

____20. **principal** a) main b) on purpose c) plentiful d) unusual

____21. **pursue** a) examine b) chase c) get rid of d) stop

____22. **restore** a) remove b) seek c) give away d) repair

____23. **solitary** a) rare b) alike c) done alone d) not reliable

____24. **transform** a) bring back b) send c) change d) end

____25. **utilize** a) protect b) use c) show d) stop

(Continues on next page)

PART B: Antonyms

In the space provided, write the letter of the choice that is most nearly **opposite** in meaning to the **boldfaced** word.

_____26. **abundant** a) healthy b) unplanned c) rare d) unkind

_____27. **aggravate** a) attack b) learn c) move d) make better

_____28. **betray** a) grow b) be happy c) keep d) be loyal to

_____29. **cease** a) give b) learn c) ruin d) start

_____30. **contrast** a) similarity b) help c) agreement d) success

_____31. **deliberate** a) unusual b) unclear c) unplanned d) unnecessary

_____32. **dependent** a) relying on oneself b) working alone c) knowing oneself d) not obvious

_____33. **dispose of** a) like b) keep c) leave d) remember

_____34. **dispute** a) test b) agreement c) group d) choice

_____35. **distinct** a) helpful b) broken c) unclear d) well-known

_____36. **exaggerate** a) understate b) go away from c) think about d) support

_____37. **excessive** a) not clear b) not enough c) strong d) not able

_____38. **fragile** a) not proper b) unhappy c) unpleasant d) unbreakable

_____39. **frustration** a) failure b) kindness c) too much d) satisfaction

_____40. **humane** a) cruel b) forgotten c) important d) too little

_____41. **intentional** a) proper b) done poorly c) plentiful d) accidental

_____42. **neutral** a) paying attention b) taking sides c) proper d) pleasant

_____43. **obnoxious** a) approving b) common c) pleasant d) intelligent

_____44. **peculiar** a) difficult b) ordinary c) weak d) excellent

_____45. **reduction** a) last choice b) increase c) start d) answer

_____46. **rejection** a) approval b) addition c) lack d) loss

_____47. **scarce** a) helpful b) recent c) too little d) plentiful

_____48. **suitable** a) improved b) unkind c) improper d) immediate

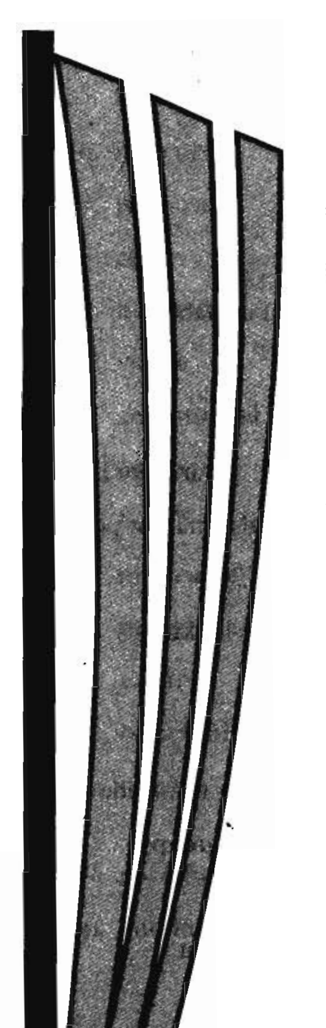
_____49. **surplus** a) success b) lack c) luck d) trouble

_____50. **unstable** a) steady b) easy c) usual d) quite small

Score (Number correct) ________ × 2 = ________%

Enter your score above and in the vocabulary performance chart on the inside back cover of the book.

Unit Two



Chapter 6

advise
current
deprive
hesitate
maintain
minimum
objection
originate
penalize
reliable

Chapter 7

abrupt
astonish
classify
complex
consent
eager
endure
exclaim
horizontal
recollect

Chapter 8

adequate
appeal
awkward
customary
establish
potential
respond
vanish
variety
wholesome

Chapter 9

brutal
discipline
eliminate
emphasis
furthermore
interpret
propose
resort
ultimate
vague

Chapter 10

accustomed
anticipate
linger
miserable
misinterpret
occur
reluctant
revise
specific
version

Unit Two: *Pretest*

In the space provided, write the letter of the choice that is closest in meaning to the **boldfaced** word.

____ 1. **advise** a) suggest b) insist c) plead d) punish

____ 2. **current** a) modern b) few in number c) good tasting d) likable

____ 3. **deprive** a) provide b) take away c) obey d) copy

____ 4. **hesitate** a) hurry b) forbid c) consider d) pause

____ 5. **maintain** a) release from captivity b) keep in existence c) prove to be correct d) admire

____ 6. **minimum** a) largest possible b) desirable c) smallest possible d) more than expected

____ 7. **objection** a) recommendation b) dislike c) reason d) prize

____ 8. **originate** a) imitate b) begin c) impress d) pretend

____ 9. **penalize** a) punish b) reward c) publish d) give up

____ 10. **reliable** a) untrustworthy b) easily tricked c) dependable d) unstable

____ 11. **abrupt** a) sudden b) expected c) delayed d) loud

____ 12. **astonish** a) continue b) surprise c) give away d) stop

____ 13. **classify** a) make clear b) put up with c) set aside for later d) arrange by type

____ 14. **complex** a) helpful b) hard to understand c) comfortable d) smallest possible

____ 15. **consent** a) agree to b) sit down c) listen d) reward

____ 16. **eager** a) unforgiving b) best c) happily excited d) good-looking

____ 17. **endure** a) punish b) demand c) put up with d) confuse

____ 18. **exclaim** a) tell b) call out c) show d) make clear

____ 19. **horizontal** a) careless b) up and down c) unexpected d) extending from side to side

____ 20. **recollect** a) remember b) put away c) agree with d) put into groups

____ 21. **adequate** a) good enough b) lacking c) important d) not needed

____ 22. **appeal** a) request b) give up c) take away the outer part d) repeat

____ 23. **awkward** a) charming b) hostile c) clumsy d) easily fooled

____ 24. **customary** a) commonly done b) foreign c) available for sale d) without value

____ 25. **establish** a) start b) knock down c) flatten d) say again

(Continues on next page)

____ 26. **potential** a) ancestors b) income c) possibility d) preference

____ 27. **respond** a) treat with respect b) mock; treat with scorn c) answer d) withhold information

____ 28. **vanish** a) make shiny b) disappear c) make new or youthful d) request

____ 29. **variety** a) opinion b) assortment c) reason d) delay

____ 30. **wholesome** a) healthful b) disgusting c) hard to get d) childlike

____ 31. **brutal** a) generous b) brave c) sympathetic d) cruel

____ 32. **discipline** a) train b) learn c) avoid d) misunderstand

____ 33. **eliminate** a) add to b) get rid of c) make more difficult d) inform

____ 34. **emphasis** a) refusal to speak b) betrayal c) importance d) stubborn act

____ 35. **furthermore** a) without b) at a later point in time c) in addition d) in spite of

____ 36. **interpret** a) confuse b) make an effort c) light from within d) explain

____ 37. **propose** a) persuade b) suggest c) exaggerate d) point out

____ 38. **resort** a) turn (to) for help b) say no to c) hold a grudge d) enable

____ 39. **ultimate** a) least important b) inefficient c) dangerous d) greatest

____ 40. **vague** a) unclear b) shining c) in fashion d) embarrassing

____ 41. **accustomed** a) unused to b) in the habit of c) unable to d) angry at

____ 42. **anticipate** a) expect b) fear c) dislike d) happen later

____ 43. **linger** a) hurry away b) get rid of (something) c) change d) remain

____ 44. **miserable** a) dampened b) youthful c) unhappy d) excited

____ 45. **misinterpret** a) have respect b) prefer c) understand incorrectly d) get rid of

____ 46. **occur** a) disappear b) repeat c) respond d) happen

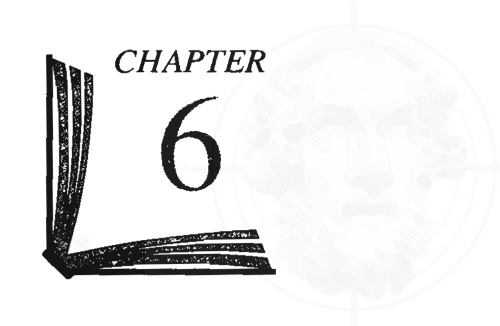
____ 47. **reluctant** a) unwilling b) eager c) quick-moving d) amused

____ 48. **revise** a) correct and improve b) discard c) copy without giving credit d) fail to complete

____ 49. **specific** a) ready b) unpleasantly loud c) exact d) willing

____ 50. **version** a) report based on one point of view b) story reflecting many opinions c) inaccurate account d) deliberately malicious story

SCORE: (Number correct) ______ × 2 = ________ %





advise	**minimum**
current	**objection**
deprive	**originate**
hesitate	**penalize**
maintain	**reliable**

Ten Words in Context

In the space provided, write the letter of the meaning closest to that of each **boldfaced** word. Use the context of the sentences to help you figure out each word's meaning.

1 advise /əd'vaɪz/ – *verb*

- I'd like to **advise** Alan to break up with Elaine, but I know he'll get angry if I offer my opinion.
- The park ranger said, "I **advise** you to hang your food from a tree if you don't want the bears to get it."

___ *Advise* means a. to punish. b. to suggest to. c. to follow.

2 current /'kʌrənt/ – *adjective*

- Rita keeps up with fashion and buys the **current** styles, but her sister wears the same basic style, year after year.
- Doctors once suggested total bed rest after surgery. However, **current** practice is to have patients walk as soon as possible after an operation.

___ *Current* means a. up-to-date. b. little known. c. older.

3 deprive /dɪ'praɪv/ – *verb*

- Isaac's mother **deprives** him of his allowance when he doesn't do his household jobs.
- Dad complains that his low-fat, low-calorie diet **deprives** him of everything he enjoys eating.

___ *Deprive of* means a. to keep from. b. to offer to. c. to protect from.

4 hesitate /'hezɪteɪt/ – *verb*

- I **hesitated** so long about buying the car that someone else bought it first.
- Rodrigo **hesitated** to ask Julie to marry him. He wasn't sure he was ready to get married.

___ *Hesitate* means a. to act quickly. b. to be undecided. c. to be pleased.

5 maintain /meɪn'teɪn/ – *verb*

- When driving, it's important to **maintain** a safe distance between your car and the car ahead of you.
- My brother must have excellent study skills. He was able to **maintain** a B average throughout college while holding a full-time job.

___ *Maintain* means a. to keep up. b. to give up. c. to pass up.

6 minimum /'mɪnɪməm/ – *adjective*

- The **minimum** number of people allowed for each bus tour is eight. If fewer people sign up, the trip will be canceled.
- What's the **minimum** price you'll take for your car? I can't afford to pay much.

___ *Minimum* means a. oldest. b. biggest. c. lowest.

7 objection
/ɒbˈdʒekʃən/
– noun

- Luz had a strong **objection** to the wallpaper her husband picked out for their living room. "It looks like a doctor's waiting room," she complained.
- Granddad had a strong **objection** to boys wearing long hair. Once when my father refused to get a haircut, Granddad cut his hair while he was asleep.

___ *Objection* means   a. interest in.   b. memory of.   c. dislike of.

8 originate
/əˈrɪdʒəneɪt/
– verb

- The ice-cream cone **originated** at the 1904 World's Fair in St. Louis. An ice-cream seller ran out of cups, so he wrapped a waffle around the ice cream and sold it that way.
- Many people believe that baseball **originated** in Cooperstown, New York, in 1839. However, it must have started earlier, since the sport was mentioned in English publications as early as 1744.

___ *Originate* means   a. to continue.   b. to begin.   c. to delay.

9 penalize
/ˈpiːnəlaɪz/
– verb

- Whenever my parents heard I had been kept after school, they would **penalize** me again at home.
- The judge decided to **penalize** the young thief with one hundred hours of volunteer work.

___ *Penalize* means   a. to depend upon.   b. to answer.   c. to punish.

10 reliable
/rɪˈlaɪəbl/
– adjective

- Joe Sherman is a **reliable** mechanic. You can count on him to tell you the truth and to fix whatever is wrong with your car.
- It's important to me to have a **reliable** baby sitter. I would be very worried if I left my baby with someone I couldn't depend on to do a careful job.

___ *Reliable* means   a. modern.   b. able to be trusted.   c. not expensive.

Matching Words with Definitions

Following are definitions of the ten words. **Print** each word next to its definition. If you look closely at each word in context, you will be able to figure out its meaning.

1. ______________ A dislike; feeling of being against something; disapproval
2. ______________ To stop because of not being able to decide; put off acting because of feeling unsure
3. ______________ To take away from; keep from having or enjoying
4. ______________ Smallest in size or amount that is allowed or possible; least
5. ______________ To continue; carry on; keep in existence
6. ______________ Modern; existing now; in general use or practice today
7. ______________ To come into being; start
8. ______________ To punish; cause to suffer for doing something wrong
9. ______________ To give advice to; recommend
10. ______________ Able to be depended upon; trustworthy

CAUTION: Do not go any further until you are sure the above answers are correct. Then you can use the definitions to help you in the following practices. Your goal is eventually to know the words well enough so that you don't need to check the definitions at all.

➢ *Sentence Check 1*

Using the answer line, complete each item below with the correct word from the box.

a. **advise**	b. **current**	c. **deprive**	d. **hesitate**	e. **maintain**
f. **minimum**	g. **objection**	h. **originate**	i. **penalize**	j. **reliable**

________ 1. A worker who is honest and does his job carefully would be called a ___ worker.

________ 2. My aunt is not a good patient. She rarely does what her doctor ___s her to do.

________ 3. The opposite of the highest salary the company allows would be its ___ salary.

________ 4. It used to be more common for teachers to ___ students by hitting them.

________ 5. We can say that the place where a river starts is where it ___s.

________ 6. We might refer to styles that are widely worn today as ___ fashions.

________ 7. Prisons ___ people of much of their freedom.

________ 8. I ___ to work more than ten hours a week this semester. I have such difficult classes that I may need more time than usual for studying.

________ 9. I have an ___ to that comedian because his jokes often hurt other people.

________ 10. You must keep up a B average to keep your football uniform. In other words, if you don't ___ good grades, you're off the team.

➢ *Sentence Check 2*

Using the answer lines, complete each item below with **two** words from the box.

____
________ 1–2. The best way to ___ Eric when he does something bad is to ___ him of his bicycle for a day.

____
________ 3–4. The girls accepted jobs that paid the ___ wage, hoping that they would get raises once they proved they were ___ workers.

____
________ 5–6. My doctor has an ___ to "crash diets." Although they cause a quick reduction° in weight, they do not help the dieter ___ that new, lower weight.

____
________ 7–8. Keisha likes her hair cut in the most ___ style. Her hairdresser ___s her about the newest fashionable looks.

____
________ 9–10. The fox terrier is a dog that ___d in England, where fox hunting was popular. It was valued there by hunters because it would not ___ to run into a fox's tunnel and drive the animal out.

➢ *Related Words*

Once you learn a new word, you can more easily understand many related words. Below are ten words related to the core words of this chapter. Use their definitions to help you write in the word that best completes each item.

a. **maintenance**, *noun*	The work of keeping something in good condition
b. **minimize**, *verb*	To reduce as much as possible
c. **originally**, *adverb*	In the beginning
d. **recur**, *verb*	To happen or appear again
e. **rely**, *verb*	To depend

______________ 1. While most dreams appear only once, some do ___. For example, one young girl dreamed over and over that she was trying to run from danger, but her shoes were slippery.

______________ 2. Proper ___ of a car involves regularly changing the oil and the sparkplugs.

______________ 3. To ___ the damage from a burn, put the burned area in cold water as soon as possible.

______________ 4. It's hard to believe these shoes were ___ white — now they are gray with dirt.

______________ 5. Richard shouldn't ___ on his mother so much — he even takes his laundry home for her to wash.

f. **adviser**, *noun*	Someone who gives advice or suggestions
g. **currently**, *adverb*	Now; at the present time
h. **hesitant**, *adjective*	Slow to act; not coming to a decision
i. **object**, *verb*	To speak out against
j. **penalty**, *noun*	A punishment

______________ 6. Since the child was faced with thirty flavors of ice cream, it was not surprising that he was ___ about which one to choose.

______________ 7. I am ___ enrolled as a full-time student, so I can work only at a part-time job.

______________ 8. So many people ___ed to the idea of a giant weekend rock concert in town that the idea was given up.

______________ 9. The soccer player touched the ball with her hands; as a ___, the other team got a free goal kick.

______________ 10. As I looked for an ___ to help me make a difficult decision, I thought about several people whom I like and respect.

Word Parts

A. The suffixes *-ance* and *-ence* often mean "the act, state, or quality of."

Examples: *maintain* — to keep in existence
maintenance — the act of keeping in existence
patient — willing to put up with something
patience — the quality of being patient

On each answer line, write the word from the box that means the same as the *italicized* words.

a. **avoidance**	b. **excellence**	c. **dependence**
d. **interference°**	e. **maintenance**	

_______________ 1. "I know you mean well," the woman said to her mother. "But I'm 25 now, and your *act of interfering* in how I do my job is not helpful."

_______________ 2. My father's *state of depending* on caffeine is not healthy for him.

_______________ 3. Takeo aims for *the quality of being excellent* in everything he does.

_______________ 4. The *act of maintaining* of good grades requires a lot of willpower.

_______________ 5. Anna's *act of avoiding* milk is easily explained — she is allergic to it.

B. The prefix *in* - often means "not," which can change words to their opposites.

Examples: *direct* — in a straight line
indirect — not in a straight line
humane° — kind
inhumane — not kind

On each answer line, write the word from the box that best completes the item.

f. **incapable**	g. **inconvenient**	h. **indistinct°**
i. **inexpensive**	j. **inhumane**	

_______________ 6. The fog was so thick that the road signs were ___, and I could barely see them.

_______________ 7. I wish there were a grocery store nearby — it is ___ to have to drive all the way across town.

_______________ 8. Treatment of elderly patients is sometimes ___. Some have been tied down to their chairs and ignored.

_______________ 9. The firefighters rescued all the people, but they were ___ of saving the building.

_______________ 10. Since we are on a budget, we buy ___ furniture at flea markets. In comparison° with our friends' new furniture, the old pieces we buy are often of better quality.

Final Check

Read the passages carefully. Then fill in each blank with the word that best fits the context.

A. Toasters

a. current	b. maintain	c. minimum
d. originate	e. reliable	

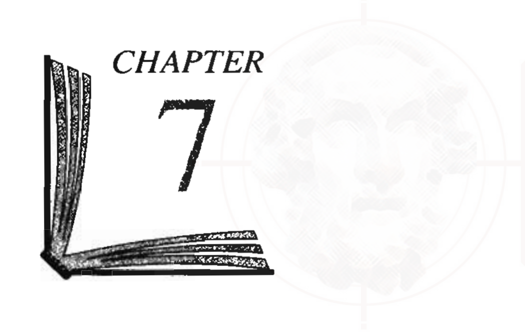
Although the practice of eating toasted bread (1)____________d about 4600 years ago, the pop-up electric toaster was not invented until 1919. These early pop-up toasters were not very (2)____________ — they broke down often. Also, they weren't able to (3)____________ an even temperature but grew hotter and hotter with each piece of bread toasted. Some poor-quality machines even popped the toast all the way across the room. Over the years, toasters have certainly improved. (4)____________ ones give us a (5)____________ of problems with repairs and temperature control.

B. A Mean Man

f. advise	g. deprive	h. hesitate
i. objection	j. penalize	

Mr. Barker says that he has no (6)____________ to kids — as long as they don't come into his yard, as long as they don't (7)____________ him of peace and quiet, and as long as they don't grow up to be teenagers.

Neighborhood kids say he's the meanest man they ever met. Who can blame them? If he sees them choosing up sides for a ball game in the street, for example, he doesn't (8)____________ a minute. He runs right to his window and yells, "You can't do that in front of MY house!" The kids are afraid of him, but they yell back that the street belongs to everybody. "Well, I (9)____________ you to watch your step!" he replies. "If any of you kids break my window or step on my flowers, you will be (10)____________d." Then he slams his window shut. Maybe a hard life has made Mr. Barker the way he is, but it's hard to have warm feelings for someone so obnoxious°.





abrupt	**eager**
astonish	**endure**
classify	**exclaim**
complex	**horizontal**
consent	**recollect**

Ten Words in Context

In the space provided, write the letter of the meaning closest to that of each **boldfaced** word. Use the context of the sentences to help you figure out each word's meaning.

1 **abrupt**
/əˈbrʌpt/
– *adjective*

- Seat belts in cars protect passengers from injuries caused by **abrupt** stops.
- An **abrupt** burst of laughter during the church service surprised everyone.

___ *Abrupt* means a. silent. b. simple. c. not expected.

2 **astonish**
/əˈstɒnɪʃ/
– *verb*

- A magician **astonished** the audience by making seemingly impossible things happen.
- The announcement that the factory was closing forever **astonished** the employees, who had not known their jobs were in danger.

___ *Astonish* means a. to delay. b. to encourage. c. to surprise.

3 **classify**
/ˈklæsɪfaɪ/
– *verb*

- The stamp collector **classified** her stamps by countries — she put all the stamps from France together, all the stamps from Spain together, and so on.
- I was surprised to learn that the sea horse is **classified** by scientists as a fish.

___ *Classify* means a. to lose. b. to group. c. to remember.

4 **complex**
/ˈkɒmpleks/
– *adjective*

- Because income tax forms are so **complex**, many people hire professionals to prepare their tax returns.
- Our family is rather **complex** — it includes many second marriages and stepfamilies. At family reunions we spend a lot of time trying to figure out how we are all related.

___ *Complex* means a. hard to understand. b. helpful. c. small.

5 **consent**
/kənˈsent/
– *verb*

- Only applicants who **consented** to a drug test were considered for the job.
- Enrique proposed to Anna by putting up a billboard saying, "Will you marry me?" She **consented** with her own sign that said, "Of course I will."

___ *Consent* means a. to say yes. b. to listen. c. to disagree.

6 **eager**
/ˈiːgə(r)/
– *adjective*

- I am always **eager** to read the latest murder story by my favorite mystery writer.
- Our dog is **eager** to greet us when we come home. She jumps up on us and begins licking our hands before the door is even shut.

___ *Eager* means a. bored. b. patient. c. happily excited.

7 endure
/en'djʊə(r)/
– *verb*

- We'll have to **endure** a few more weeks of cold, gray winter before spring arrives.
- Until someone finds a cure for the common cold, there's not much to do but **endure** the runny noses and sneezes.

___ *Endure* means a. to enjoy. b. to organize. c. to live with unwillingly.

8 exclaim
/ɪk'skleɪm/
– *verb*

- "Wow!" "Ooooh!" "Aaah!" the crowd **exclaimed** as the colorful fireworks burst in the sky.
- When a cardinal landed on the bird feeder, the little girl **exclaimed**, "Look! A red blue jay!"

___ *Exclaim* means a. to remember. b. to complain. c. to call out.

9 horizontal
/hɒrɪ'zɒntəl/
– *adjective*

- The surgery left a **horizontal** scar that runs from one side of my stomach to the other.
- **Horizontal** stripes on clothing generally make the wearer look wider.

___ *Horizontal* means a. dirty. b. little. c. running from side to side.

10 recollect
/ˌriːkə'lekt/
– *verb*

- Can you **recollect** much about being in first grade?
- I couldn't **recollect** my sister's phone number, so I had to call the phone company's information number.

___ *Recollect* means a. to agree with. b. to remember. c. to arrange.

Matching Words with Definitions

Following are definitions of the ten words. **Print** each word next to its definition. If you look closely at each word in context, you will be able to figure out its meaning.

1. ________________ Lying flat; lying or extending from side to side (as opposed to going up and down)
2. ________________ To put up with; bear patiently
3. ________________ Looking forward to with great interest or desire
4. ________________ Not simple; not easy to understand or figure out
5. ________________ To agree to something
6. ________________ To speak or cry out suddenly, as from strong feelings or surprise
7. ________________ To arrange or organize into groups or types; place in a category°
8. ________________ To remember; bring an image or idea back to mind
9. ________________ To surprise greatly; amaze
10. ________________ Sudden and unexpected

CAUTION: Do not go any further until you are sure the above answers are correct. Then you can use the definitions to help you in the following practices. Your goal is eventually to know the words well enough so that you don't need to check the definitions at all.

➣ *Sentence Check 1*

Using the answer line, complete each item below with the correct word from the box.

a. **abrupt**	b. **astonish**	c. **classify**	d. **complex**	e. **consent**
f. **eager**	g. **endure**	h. **exclaim**	i. **horizontal**	j. **recollect**

________ 1. Sometimes I think I can't ___ one more day of winter, but I know I have to put up with it until spring.

________ 2. Did you know that scientists ___ the whale as a mammal? Most people think of it as a fish.

________ 3. Although I remember little about first grade, I ___ my year in third grade very clearly.

________ 4. The great magician Houdini would ___ audiences by escaping from chains, locked trunks, and even sealed coffins.

________ 5. The day after Jackie had her waist-length hair cut short, nearly everyone she met ___ed, "Oh! Your hair!"

________ 6. A car would probably come to an ___ stop if a dog ran out in front of it.

________ 7. Knowing that she had done well on every test, Phyllis was ___ to see her final grade for the course.

________ 8. Why must our tax forms be so ___? Why can't the government make them easier to understand?

________ 9. It's true that ___ stripes on clothing make you look wider, and stripes that go up and down make you look taller.

________ 10. If you won the lottery, would you ___ to having your name and picture printed in the newspaper?

➣ *Sentence Check 2*

Using the answer lines, complete each item below with **two** words from the box.

____
________ 1–2. In early spring, ___ changes in the weather can ___ everyone. It may be mild and sunny in the morning, then snowing by bedtime.

____
________ 3–4. I didn't want to have dental surgery, but I decided to ___ to it rather than ___ my toothache any longer. I just want the pain to cease°.

____
________ 5–6. I am thinking of buying Felix a striped T-shirt for his birthday, but I can't ___ if he likes to wear ___ stripes or stripes that go up and down.

____
________ 7–8. Scientists ___ animals in a ___ system of groupings, using features such as being warm- or cold-blooded and having feathers or scales.

____
________ 9–10. My kids are not exactly ___ to go to school; when I wake them every morning, they ___, "Oh, no! Isn't it Saturday yet?"

➣ *Related Words*

Once you learn a new word, you can more easily understand many related words. Below are ten words related to the core words of this chapter. Use their definitions to help you write in the word that best completes each item.

a. **eagerly**, *adverb*	With excitement and impatience
b. **eagerness**, *noun*	An impatient desire for something
c. **exclamation**, *noun*	A cry or shout of excitement or strong feeling
d. **horizon**, *noun*	The level line where earth (or water) and sky seem to meet
e. **recollection**, *noun*	A memory

______________ 1. Ramon fell off his bicycle and was knocked out; later he had no ___ of the accident — he couldn't remember it at all.

______________ 2. Sitting on the front steps, I waited ___ for the mail to arrive; I was expecting a letter from my boyfriend.

______________ 3. My little daughter was too excited on Christmas morning — in her ___ to see her presents, she tumbled down the stairs.

______________ 4. In the movie, the shipwrecked sailors constantly watched for a rescue ship on the ___.

______________ 5. When their rescuers finally appeared, the sailors shouted out a one-word ___: "Saved!"

f. **abruptly**, *adverb*	Suddenly; unexpectedly
g. **astonishment**, *noun*	Great surprise or amazement
h. **classification**, *noun*	A group or division
i. **complexity**, *noun*	The quality of being detailed and hard to understand
j. **endurance**, *noun*	The ability to bear a hardship

______________ 6. Distance runners need to have not only strength and speed, but also ___, to keep on going with pain and thirst for so many miles.

______________ 7. Tomatoes belong to the ___ of fruits, not the category° of vegetables.

______________ 8. The ___ of the subject makes my chemistry course difficult, but it is also very interesting. Since I want to maintain° a good grade-point average, I'll have to study hard.

______________ 9. Heidi's boyfriend took her by surprise when he ___ asked her to marry him.

______________ 10. When Heidi told us about the engagement, she said, "Imagine my ___! He always said he wasn't the marrying kind."

Synonyms and Antonyms

A. Synonyms. Write the letter of the word or phrase that most nearly means the **same** as each boldfaced word.

____ 1. **abrupt**

a. expected b. delayed
c. sudden d. polite

____ 2. **astonish**

a. borrow b. request
c. allow d. surprise

____ 3. **classify**

a. set aside for later b. have no use for
c. decide the value d. organize into groups

____ 4. **endure**

a. bear up under b. remember
c. agree d. deny

____ 5. **exclaim**

a. tell b. call out
c. notice d. bear

B. Antonyms. Write the letter of the word or phrase that most nearly means the **opposite** of each boldfaced word.

____ 6. **complex**

a. simple b. true
c. interesting d. wise

____ 7. **consent**

a. try b. disagree
c. begin d. practice

____ 8. **eager**

a. unsteady b. perfect
c. expected d. not interested

____ 9. **horizontal**

a. in a circle b. lying at a slant
c. straight up and down d. outside

____10. **recollect**

a. forget b. forgive
c. plan d. wonder

Final Check

Read the passages carefully. Then fill in each blank with the word that best fits the context.

A. A Special Memory

a. **astonish**	b. **consent**	c. **eager**
d. **horizontal**	e. **recollect**	

Tony and I often did things without asking our mom to (1)____________________ to our activities — because she probably wouldn't. Besides, we loved secret projects. One summer we built a treehouse hidden among some tall trees on Mr. Leary's lot. The window was crooked, and the floor wasn't exactly (2)____________________, although the tilt wasn't too bad. We took Mom's ladder to use as our stairs and decorated the place with an old rug and some pillows.

One day we heard Mom yelling up to us, "So that's where my ladder went!" Then she told us that Mr. Leary had called to say that the treehouse had to come down. "You could fall and get hurt," she explained, "and he doesn't want to get sued — and he's right. That treehouse is dangerous. I advise° you to come down from there right now."

But that night, (3)____________________ to spend one last hour there, Tony and I sneaked out and headed for the treehouse. As we got near it, we were (4)____________________ed to see a candle glowing in the crooked window, so we climbed up very quietly and peeked in. I can still (5)____________________ the scene clearly. There was Mom, sitting on one of our pillows, smiling. Next to her were a pitcher of lemonade and three glasses. "It's about time you got here," she said. "What took you so long?"

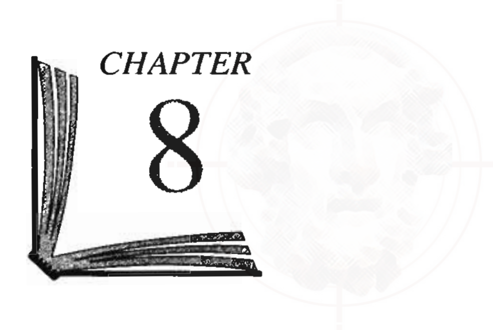
B. Watch Your Manners!

f. **abrupt**	g. **classify**	h. **complex**
i. **endure**	j. **exclaim**	

Most of us think we know how to be polite. But some things that Americans (6)____________________ as good manners may seem rude in other parts of the world. Every culture has its own (7)____________________ set of rules about what is and isn't acceptable.

For example, an American who went to a birthday party in Japan brought the fun to an (8)____________________ end by giving a clock as a present. In Japan, giving anyone a clock is a way of saying "I hope your time is running out" — in other words, "I hope you die soon." Also, Americans in China are seen as bad-tempered when they (9)____________________ something loudly, out of excitement or to make a point. In China, a loud voice is a sign of strong anger.

Of course, foreign visitors to the United States can also misunderstand our ways. For instance, one Arab who was a guest at a banquet in Washington later complained, "I didn't get a thing to eat." It turned out he had said, "No, thank you," each time he was offered food. In his country, it was good manners to refuse food several times before accepting it. His American hosts didn't know that, so they just let the poor fellow (10)____________________ his hunger.





adequate	potential
appeal	respond
awkward	vanish
customary	variety
establish	wholesome

Ten Words in Context

In the space provided, write the letter of the meaning closest to that of each **boldfaced** word. Use the context of the sentences to help you figure out each word's meaning.

1 **adequate** /ˈædɪkwət/ – *adjective*

- When I didn't have time to wash the windows, I hired a neighbor's child to do it. He did an **adequate** job — not perfect, but good enough.
- Open sandals are not **adequate** footwear for factory work. You should wear heavy shoes to protect your feet.

___ *Adequate* means a. OK. b. poor. c. popular.

2 **appeal** /əˈpiːl/ – *verb*

- Every year, Jerry Lewis goes on TV to **appeal** to viewers for money to help people with the illness muscular dystrophy.
- When police can't solve a crime, they sometimes **appeal** to the public for help.

___ *Appeal* means a. to answer. b. to run. c. to make a request.

3 **awkward** /ˈɔːkwəd/ – *adjective*

- When I was 13, I was very **awkward**. My feet seemed too big, and I was always tripping over things.
- Rico is such an **awkward** dancer that he constantly steps on his partner's feet.

___ *Awkward* means a. not strong. b. not graceful. c. kind.

4 **customary** /ˈkʌstəmərɪ/ – *adjective*

- In some towns, it's **customary** for the "Welcome Wagon" to visit newcomers and tell them about the town.
- Americans usually eat their big meal in the evening. In Ireland, however, it is **customary** to eat a big dinner in the afternoon and a light meal at night.

___ *Customary* means a. not polite. b. normal. c. rare.

5 **establish** /ɪˈstæblɪʃ/ – *verb*

- The first lending library was **established** in Scotland in 1725.
- The first movie theater in the United States was **established** in New Orleans in 1896.

___ *Establish* means a. to leave. b. to stop. c. to start.

6 **potential** /pəʊˈtenʃəl/ – *noun*

- My grandmother had the **potential** to be a great teacher, but she couldn't afford to go to college.
- Everyone agrees that Carlos has the **potential** of being a major league baseball player. To become that good, he must continue to work hard.

___ *Potential* means a. request. b. memory. c. ability.

7 respond
/rɪˈspɒnd/
– verb

- You asked me a question, so why don't you stop talking for a minute so that I can **respond**?
- The group of men whistled and called out to Kim as she walked by, but she didn't **respond** at all. She simply kept walking.

___ *Respond* means a. to reply. b. to repeat. c. to leave.

8 vanish
/ˈvænɪʃ/
– verb

- The magician made the rabbit **vanish** by slipping it under a secret door.
- You gave a stranger $500 in cash to paint your house? How do you know he won't **vanish** with the money?

___ *Vanish* means a. to answer. b. to begin. c. to go out of sight.

9 variety
/vəˈraɪətɪ/
– noun

- In the spring, the woods contain a **variety** of wildflowers, including bluebells, daffodils, and violets.
- Instead of being a **variety** of colors, all of Gale's clothes were lavender or purple.

___ *Variety* means a. mixture. b. absence. c. shade.

10 wholesome
/ˈhəʊlsəm/
– adjective

- Ken used to spend hours in a smoky video arcade where drug dealers hung out, but now he prefers more **wholesome** activities, like sports and music.
- We now know smoking is not **wholesome**, but early cigarette ads claimed physical and mental benefits for smokers.

___ *Wholesome* means a. obvious. b. expensive. c. healthy.

Matching Words with Definitions

Following are definitions of the ten words. **Print** each word next to its definition. If you look closely at each word in context, you will be able to figure out its meaning.

1. ________________ To bring into being; set up
2. ________________ To make an important request (to someone for something)
3. ________________ A number of different kinds; assortment
4. ________________ Tending to improve the character, the mind, or the body
5. ________________ To answer, either by word or by action
6. ________________ Good enough (to meet the need)
7. ________________ Usual; commonly done
8. ________________ To disappear from sight
9. ________________ Clumsy; not graceful
10. ________________ A natural ability that may or may not develop; possibility

CAUTION: Do not go any further until you are sure the above answers are correct. Then you can use the definitions to help you in the following practices. Your goal is eventually to know the words well enough so that you don't need to check the definitions at all.

➢ *Sentence Check 1*

Using the answer line, complete each item below with the correct word from the box.

a. **adequate**	b. **appeal**	c. **awkward**	d. **customary**	e. **establish**
f. **potential**	g. **respond**	h. **vanish**	i. **variety**	j. **wholesome**

________________ 1. An acorn has the ___ to be an oak tree.

________________ 2. I looked everywhere for my car keys, but they seem to have ___ed into thin air.

________________ 3. Rodney has worked in a ___ of positions, including trucker, carpenter, and rancher.

________________ 4. The signs the children put up on telephone poles ___ed to people to help find their lost cat.

________________ 5. Starting a day with exercise is more ___ than starting the day with a cigarette.

________________ 6. I'd love a huge apartment, but this small one is ___; it serves my needs.

________________ 7. The American Girl Scouts were ___ed in 1912.

________________ 8. People's habits can be referred to as their ___ behavior.

________________ 9. When asked a question, we usually ___, even if it's only to say, "I don't know."

________________ 10. On land, crocodiles seem slow and ___, but once in the water they are fast and graceful swimmers.

➢ *Sentence Check 2*

Using the answer lines, complete each item below with **two** words from the box.

____
________________ 1–2. Parents were happy when the Youth Club was ___ed in town because it gave their kids a ___ place to go, have fun, and meet their friends.

____
________________ 3–4. The ___ of fruits and vegetables at Fresh Foods is ___, but not as good as the selection at Grocery Giant.

____
________________ 5–6. A talent agent ___ed to Christi's parents to let her appear in commercials. He thought Christi had the ___ of being a very good model and making a lot of money. However, her parents had an objection° to letting a ten-year-old work.

____
________________ 7–8. In my dream, an old woman says, "Hurry! Come with me!" But I never go with her — she ___es before I have a chance to ___.

____
________________ 9–10. It is ___ for people to bow to one another in Japan. When Fred visited that country he bowed too, even though he felt ___ doing it.

➣ *Related Words*

Once you learn a new word, you can more easily understand many related words. Below are ten words related to the core words of this chapter. Use their definitions to help you write in the word that best completes each item.

a. **customarily**, *adverb*	Usually
b. **establishment**, *noun*	A business
c. **response**, *noun*	An answer
d. **unwholesome**, *adjective*	Having a bad effect on health or character
e. **various**, *adjective*	Several; of different kinds

________________ 1. One of the oldest ___s in the city is the Red Lion Inn, which was built in 1835.

________________ 2. Letty's parents are afraid that her older boyfriend, who has been in trouble with the law, is an ___ influence on her.

________________ 3. When we asked the crying child what was the matter, her only ___ was to cry louder.

________________ 4. Quaker religious services ___ take place in silence.

________________ 5. We tried ___ ways to get rid of the mice in our house, including traps, poison, and a cat.

f. **responsive**, *adjective*	Reacting in a positive way
g. **custom**, *noun*	A habit
h. **inadequate**, *adjective*	Not good enough
i. **potentially**, *adverb*	Possibly; able to happen
j. **re-establish**, *verb*	To set up again

________________ 6. It is natural to feel ___ on the first days of a new job — there is so much to learn!

________________ 7. The teacher was not ___ to the students' suggestion that the test be canceled.

________________ 8. A loaded gun in the same house with curious children creates a ___ deadly situation — an accident could easily happen.

________________ 9. It is my grandfather's ___ to walk three miles each morning before breakfast.

________________ 10. After years of being out of touch, Dad and his brother have ___ed their friendship.

➢ Word Parts

A. The prefix *re-* often mean "again."

Examples: *utilize°* — to make use of
reutilize — to make use of again

On each answer line, write the word from the box that best completes the item.

a. **reanalyze°**	b. **re-establish**	c. **reheat**
d. **relearn**	e. **reutilize°**	

______________ 1. When I get home late from work, I usually find some leftovers that I can ___ for dinner.

______________ 2. It is easier to ___ something you once knew and forgot than to learn something for the first time.

______________ 3. Mr. Amin did not give up when a highway was built where his store had once been. He decided to ___ his business in another part of town.

______________ 4. After finishing a difficult math problem, I often ___ it, just to be sure I have the correct answer.

______________ 5. After I empty plastic bags from the supermarket, I ___ them. I may use them as storage bags or even bring them back to the supermarket to use there again.

B. The prefix *un-* often means "not." It can change words to their opposites.

Examples: *intentional°* — done on purpose
unintentional — not done on purpose; done by accident
stable — steady
unstable° — not steady

On each answer line, write the word from the box that best completes the item.

f. **unintentional°**	g. **uninterested**	h. **unlucky**
i. **unstable°**	j. **unwholesome**	

______________ 6. Most dogs are ___ in vegetables.

______________ 7. Many people eat an ___ diet, filled with fried foods, fatty meats, and sugar, and lacking in vegetables and grains.

______________ 8. "Oh, I'm sorry," said the man who bumped into me. "That was ___."

______________ 9. So many people believe that the number thirteen is ___ that some hotels won't give a room that number.

______________ 10. Our strangely shaped dining-room chairs are so ___ that several people have fallen out of them.

Final Check

Read the passages carefully. Then fill in each blank with the word that best fits the context.

A. Big Brothers and Sisters

a. **appeal**	b. **establish**	c. **potential**
d. **variety**	e. **wholesome**	

This week, the local Big Brother/Big Sister Agency (1)________________ed to the community for volunteers. The organization is looking for men and women who are willing to (2)________________ a new friendship with a young boy or girl from a single-parent home. The only thing required for becoming a volunteer is the desire to become friends with the children, to help them to stay in school, and to choose (3)________________ activities that will keep them out of trouble. Volunteers can do a (4)________________ of things with their little "brothers" or "sisters," such as taking them to the park or going out to eat. Whatever activities they choose, volunteers will play an important part in the children's lives, helping them to build their (5)________________ to live full lives and become good citizens.

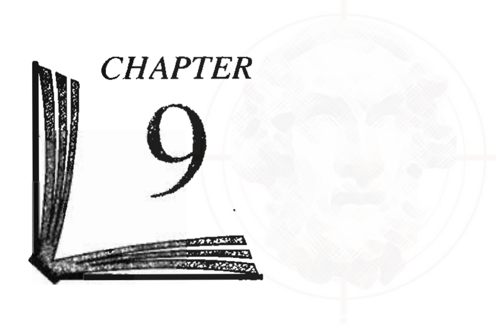
B. Kevin's First Date

f. **adequate**	g. **awkward**	h. **customary**
i. **respond**	j. **vanish**	

If you ask Kevin what the most embarrasing time of his life was, he will surely tell you about his first date, for a ninth-grade dance. He was so afraid of rejection° when he asked the girl to go with him that he almost didn't notice when she consented° to be his date.

The day of the dance was no better. Between the time he rang her doorbell and the time her father answered, he forgot his date's name — completely. He mumbled something about school (he did remember the school's name), and the girl's father let him in. The man then shot some questions at Kevin, to make sure he was an (6)________________ date for his darling daughter. Kevin could barely (7)________________ to the questions because his nervous thirteen-year-old voice squeaked and cracked so much.

Since it was (8)________________ for boys to bring flowers on this special occasion, Kevin had done so. But when his date came down the stairs in a thin-strapped pink dress and he opened the florist's box, he became even more nervous. Inside was an excessively° large flower in a bright orange color that didn't go at all with the pink dress. As he pinned the giant blossom onto the gown, he made an (9)________________ movement, stuck his finger, and bled — on the dress. The girl was so astonished° that her mouth fell open. He wanted to (10)________________ from the face of the earth and never be seen again. He even considered transferring to another school. As it was, he developed such a poor attitude° about dating that he didn't ask another girl out for the next two years.




CHAPTER 9

brutal	**interpret**
discipline	**propose**
eliminate	**resort**
emphasis	**ultimate**
furthermore	**vague**

Ten Words in Context

In the space provided, write the letter of the meaning closest to that of each **boldfaced** word. Use the context of the sentences to help you figure out each word's meaning.

1 brutal /ˈbruːtəl/ – *adjective*

- Brenda's first husband was **brutal**. When he beat her for the third time, she finally left him.
- Troy's mother never hit him, but she was **brutal**. Her cruel words were more painful than any beating could have been.

___ *Brutal* means a. youthful. b. hardly ever seen. c. mean.

2 discipline /ˈdɪsɪplɪn/ – *verb*

- The ballplayer was put out of the game for hitting an umpire. He was also **disciplined** with a $2,000 fine.
- José wanted to teach his children to be nonviolent, so he **disciplined** them in gentle ways, such as sending them to their rooms for some quiet "time out."

___ *Discipline* means a. to punish. b. to leave. c. to turn to for help.

3 eliminate /ɪˈlɪmɪneɪt/ – *verb*

- If you hang up clothes right after the dryer stops, you can **eliminate** the need to iron many items.
- Because my father has high blood pressure, he's supposed to **eliminate** salt from his diet.

___ *Eliminate* means a. to add to. b. to remove. c. to repeat.

4 emphasis /ˈemfəsɪs/ – *noun*

- Brad's father placed a lot of **emphasis** on doing well in sports but gave little attention to doing well in school.
- In my Spanish class, too much **emphasis** was given to reading and not enough to speaking.

___ *Emphasis* means a. delay. b. addition. c. importance.

5 furthermore /ˈfɜːðəmɔː(r)/ – *adverb*

- "I don't believe your story about a flat tire," said Hal's boss. "And **furthermore**, I haven't believed any of your other excuses for being late."
- The Bulls will win because they are a talented team. **Furthermore**, they are coached well.

___ *Furthermore* means a. instead. b. later. c. also.

6 interpret /ɪnˈtɜːprɪt/ – *verb*

- After Ray had a dental x-ray, the dentist sat down with him to **interpret** it.
- How should I **interpret** the fact that, although we were friendly yesterday, Jean refused to speak to me today?

___ *Interpret* means a. to explain. b. to suggest. c. to discover.

7 propose
/prəʊˈpəʊz/
– verb

- Our little brother **proposed** buying our parents a puppy for Christmas, but instead we gave them a coffee grinder.
- Rafael was obviously too tired to study, so his mother **proposed** that he take a nap and get back to work later.

___ *Propose* means a. to predict. b. to remember. c. to suggest.

8 resort
/rɪˈzɔːt/
– verb

- Once my friend was so low on money that he **resorted** to selling his blood to a blood bank.
- Although school was hard for me, I never **resorted** to cheating.

___ *Resort to* means a. to explain. b. to forget about. c. to turn to.

9 ultimate
/ˈʌltɪmət/
– adjective

- Although they have reached some understandings, the **ultimate** goal of the conference is to sign an international arms-control agreement.
- Saying they learned a lot in class is the **ultimate** compliment students can pay a teacher.

___ *Ultimate* means a. greatest. b. most interesting. c. unknown.

10 vague
/veɪg/
– adjective

- On the essay test, give detailed answers, not **vague** ones.
- Ben had only a **vague** idea of what yeast was. He knew it was used to make beer and bread, but he wasn't sure what it did.

___ *Vague* means a. general. b. curious. c. wrong.

Matching Words with Definitions

Following are definitions of the ten words. **Print** each word next to its definition. If you look closely at each word in context, you will be able to figure out its meaning.

1. ______________ Not clear; not exact; not definite
2. ______________ To put forward for thinking over or accepting; suggest (an idea)
3. ______________ To punish; cause to suffer for doing something wrong
4. ______________ To turn or go (to) for help; make use of aid
5. ______________ Cruel; heartless
6. ______________ Special attention; importance given to something
7. ______________ In addition; besides
8. ______________ To get rid of; do away with
9. ______________ To explain the meaning of; make sense of
10. ______________ Greatest; highest possible

CAUTION: Do not go any further until you are sure the above answers are correct. Then you can use the definitions to help you in the following practices. Your goal is eventually to know the words well enough so that you don't need to check the definitions at all.

➣ *Sentence Check 1*

Using the answer line, complete each item below with the correct word from the box.

a. **brutal**	b. **discipline**	c. **eliminate**	d. **emphasis**	e. **furthermore**
f. **interpret**	g. **propose**	h. **resort**	i. **ultimate**	j. **vague**

______________ 1. Ms. Ramirez took her son's bike away for a week to ___ him after he lied to her.

______________ 2. Your ___ goal is the highest one you hope to reach.

______________ 3. If you were low on cash, would you ___ to selling your blood?

______________ 4. When I ask my children where they're going, I don't accept ___ answers. I want to know exactly where they'll be.

______________ 5. Since I didn't understand the results of my blood test, the doctor ___ed it for me.

______________ 6. We encourage our children to ___ weekend activities in which the whole family can participate.

______________ 7. People take aspirin to ___ headaches.

______________ 8. One way to introduce an additional point is with the word "___."

______________ 9. Your boss will put the greatest ___ on the project he or she considers most important.

______________ 10. Someone without mercy can be ___.

➣ *Sentence Check 2*

Using the answer lines, complete each item below with **two** words from the box.

____
______________ 1–2. "Your answers were too ___," said the teacher. "You should have made them more clear by adding details. ___, you skipped several questions."

____
______________ 3–4. Even though there are plenty of gentle ways to ___ a child, many parents are quick to ___ to spanking when a child behaves badly. Many parents need to learn how to penalize° their children in positive ways.

____
______________ 5–6. Liz has cut down her smoking to only three cigarettes a day, but her ___ goal is to ___ smoking from her life.

____
______________ 7–8. Chu's parents had never seen an American-style report card before, so when Chu's teacher met with them, her ___ was on helping them ___ what it said.

____
______________ 9–10. Gail ___d that we go to the movies instead of attending a boxing match because she feels that boxing is a ___ sport.

➢ *Related Words*

Once you learn a new word, you can more easily understand many related words. Below are ten words related to the core words of this chapter. Use their definitions to help you write in the word that best completes each item.

a. **brutality**, *noun*	Cruelty
b. **emphasize**, *verb*	To give special force to; stress
c. **interpreter**, *noun*	Someone who translates one language into another
d. **ultimately**, *adverb*	In the end; finally
e. **vagueness**, *noun*	The condition of not being clear

______________ 1. The instructions in this beginners' cookbook ___ measuring ingredients carefully.

______________ 2. The Humane° Society came to check on Mr. Speck when neighbors reported his ___ to his dogs.

______________ 3. Marcos worked hard as a roofer for ten years, saved his money, and ___ started his own roofing business.

______________ 4. Because Julie speaks English and Vietnamese equally well, she often serves as an ___ for her parents and customers in their restaurant.

______________ 5. The memory of an event when I was three years old has the ___ of a hardly remembered dream.

a. **brute**, *noun*	A cruel person
b. **disciplinary**, *adjective*	Having to do with teaching a lesson or punishing
c. **elimination**, *noun*	The getting rid of something
d. **proposal**, *noun*	An idea; suggestion
e. **vaguely**, *adverb*	Not clearly

______________ 6. No one liked Dad's ___ that we spend our vacation at home painting the house.

______________ 7. The vice-principal at our school is in charge of ___ matters, such as deciding if a student should be suspended.

______________ 8. The police chief said, "We will find the ___s who beat this poor teenager to death."

______________ 9. The Salk vaccine, developed in the 1950s, led to the ___ of polio in many parts of the world.

______________ 10. Sidney looks like his brother only ___. They're about the same size, and there is something similar about their mouths and eyes.

Synonyms and Antonyms

A. Synonyms. Write the letter of the word or phrase that most nearly means the **same** as each boldfaced word.

____ 1. **emphasis**
- a. flavor
- b. memory
- c. laughter
- d. importance

____ 2. **furthermore**
- a. on the other hand
- b. for instance
- c. also
- d. instead

____ 3. **interpret**
- a. punish
- b. memorize
- c. resist
- d. explain

____ 4. **propose**
- a. suggest
- b. deny
- c. lie
- d. pretend

____ 5. **resort to**
- a. turn to
- b. avoid
- c. suggest
- d. talk about

B. Antonyms. Write the letter of the word or phrase that most nearly means the **opposite** of each boldfaced word.

____ 6. **brutal**
- a. firm
- b. kindly
- c. quiet
- d. small

____ 7. **discipline**
- a. greet
- b. interrupt
- c. reward
- d. drop

____ 8. **eliminate**
- a. ignore
- b. hang around
- c. refuse
- d. add

____ 9. **ultimate**
- a. least possible
- b. most difficult
- c. clear
- d. medium

____ 10. **vague**
- a. needed
- b. exact
- c. trusted
- d. loud

➣ *Final Check*

Read the passages carefully. Then fill in each blank with the word that best fits the context.

A. Differences in a Gym Program

a. **emphasis**	b. **interpret**	c. **propose**
d. **ultimate**	e. **vague**	

Last spring, some parents spoke to the school board about the gym program at Walnut Street School. The parents protested the difference in programs offered to boys and girls. The boys were taught a variety° of active sports and given good equipment. They had the chance to join several teams. For girls, however, the (1)____________________ in gym was on dancing and exercise. They had no teams and little equipment.

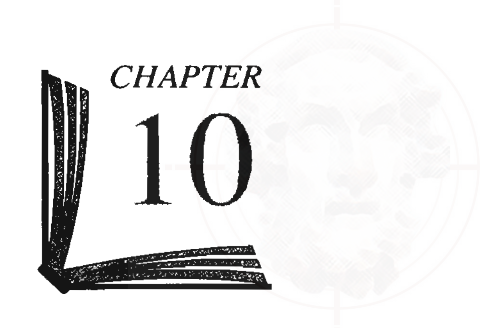
Why were there such big differences between the two programs? The school district's rules about physical education were (2)____________________. Since they didn't say exactly what should be taught, each school (3)____________________ed the rules in its own way.

The parents (4)____________________d allowing both boys and girls to use all the gym equipment at the school. And they appealed° to the school board for some sports teams to be organized for the girls. They pointed out that girls have as much potential° in sports and as much need for physical fitness as boys do. Their (5) ____________________ goal was to give all the children an equal gym experience.

B. Teaching a Lesson

f. **brutal**	g. **discipline**	h. **eliminate**
i. **furthermore**	j. **resort**	

One reason that parents may have to (6)____________________ children is to (7)____________________ behaviors that are rude or hurtful. Unfortunately, some parents use (8)____________________ punishments to teach their children to be good. But cruel treatment only serves to demonstrate° to children that it is acceptable for them to (9)____________________ to hitting and punching when they need to solve a problem. (10)____________________, children who are hit too often and too hard are deprived° of a feeling of safety. They grow up expecting that the whole world will be cruel to them, and thus, they often become cruel to others.





accustomed	**occur**
anticipate	**reluctant**
linger	**revise**
miserable	**specific**
misinterpret	**version**

Ten Words in Context

In the space provided, write the letter of the meaning closest to that of each **boldfaced** word. Use the context of the sentences to help you figure out each word's meaning.

1 accustomed /ə'kʌstəmd/ – *adjective*

- Although my grandfather was **accustomed** to sucking a sugar cube while he drank tea, the sugar never seemed to harm his teeth.
- After years of living in sunny Puerto Rico, Alma had trouble becoming **accustomed** to the snowy Minnesota weather.

___ *Accustomed* means a. uncomfortable with. b. shocked by. c. used to.

2 anticipate /æn'tɪsɪpeɪt/ – *verb*

- Lee **anticipated** heavy traffic this morning, so he left for the airport an hour early.
- Because I **anticipated** a snowstorm, I bought extra groceries in case I couldn't get to the store for several days.

___ *Anticipate* means a. to doubt. b. to enjoy. c. to think likely to happen.

3 linger /'lɪŋgə(r)/ – *verb*

- My husband has difficulty leaving any social event. He likes to **linger** by the door, chatting on and on with our hosts.
- After the bowling matches are over, we usually **linger** for a while to talk to our friends on the other teams.

___ *Linger* means a. to stare. b. to stay. c. to expect.

4 miserable /'mɪzərəbl/ – *adjective*

- The Farrells were **miserable** on their camping trip because the green flies wouldn't stop biting them for a minute.
- Gino is sure to be **miserable** during the allergy season if he doesn't get shots.

___ *Miserable* means a. uncomfortable. b. not proper. c. rested.

5 misinterpret /mɪsɪn'tɜːprɪt/ – *verb*

- When I invited my new neighbor to dinner, she **misinterpreted** my neighborliness as romantic interest.
- It's clear that Jay **misinterpreted** his wife's request. He brought her flowers for a vase instead of flour for a cake.

___ *Misinterpret* means a. to want. b. to cause. c. to understand wrongly.

6 occur /ə'kɜː(r)/ – *verb*

- A robbery **occurred** at the restaurant just minutes after we left.
- The first moonwalk **occurred** on July 20th, 1969, after Neil Armstrong stepped on the moon and said, "That's one small step for a man, one giant leap for mankind."

___ *Occur* means a. to find. b. to disappear. c. to happen.

7 reluctant
/rɪˈlʌktənt/
– adjective

- Since I'm **reluctant** to have people know my phone number, I keep it unlisted.
- Although the lawyer was **reluctant** to tell his client such disappointing news, he had no choice but to do so.

___ *Reluctant* means a. known. b. unwilling. c. excited.

8 revise
/rɪˈvaɪz/
– verb

- Don't just write a paper out once and hand it in. It's important to **revise** what you write until your paper is in good shape.
- Recent price increases for lumber have made it necessary for carpenters to **revise** their construction charges.

___ *Revise* means a. to remember. b. to make changes in. c. to read again.

9 specific
/spəˈsɪfɪk/
– adjective

- Gina said that she and Howard had some sort of quarrel, but she didn't give me any **specific** information.
- I give very **specific** instructions to new baby sitters so they'll understand exactly what I want done. I even show exactly how to diaper and feed my son.

___ *Specific* means a. hard to believe. b. hurried. c. detailed.

10 version
/ˈvɜːʃən/
– noun

- The play *West Side Story* is a modern musical **version** of Shakespeare's *Romeo and Juliet.*
- There have been at least six movies about Frankenstein's monster, but the best is still the 1931 **version**, with Boris Karloff.

___ *Version* means a. retelling. b. suggestion. c. correction.

Matching Words with Definitions

Following are definitions of the ten words. **Print** each word next to its definition. If you look closely at each word in context, you will be able to figure out its meaning.

1. ________________ In the habit of; used to
2. ________________ Unwilling; wanting not to do something
3. ________________ Definite; exact
4. ________________ To delay leaving; remain, especially as if unwilling to leave
5. ________________ Very unhappy or uncomfortable
6. ________________ To expect; foresee
7. ________________ To understand incorrectly
8. ________________ A story told in a different form or with a different point of view
9. ________________ To happen; take place
10. ________________ To change in order to improve or to include new information

CAUTION: Do not go any further until you are sure the above answers are correct. Then you can use the definitions to help you in the following practices. Your goal is eventually to know the words well enough so that you don't need to check the definitions at all.

Sentence Check 1

Using the answer line, complete each item below with the correct word from the box.

a. **accustomed**	b. **anticipate**	c. **linger**	d. **miserable**	e. **misinterpret**
f. **occur**	g. **reluctant**	h. **revise**	i. **specific**	j. **version**

______ 1. Could you ___ for a few minutes after the meeting so I can talk privately to you?

______ 2. I ___ about forty guests at our New Year's Eve party, but I'm preparing food for fifty, just in case.

______ 3. It's about time the city put up a stop sign at that corner — an accident ___s there every month or two.

______ 4. Although the apartment met our needs, we were ___ to sign a long-term lease.

______ 5. Dina wrote a ___ of *Romeo and Juliet* that has a happy ending.

______ 6. Because Clark's directions were so ___, I found his new home without difficulty.

______ 7. After our cat was run over by a car, my son felt ___ for weeks.

______ 8. For someone brought up in a warm climate, it may take time to become ___ to cold weather.

______ 9. Another word for "misunderstand" is "___."

______ 10. Before we present our play to the third-grade class, we will ___ it so it is easier for young children to understand.

Sentence Check 2

Using the answer lines, complete each item below with **two** words from the box.

______
______ 1–2. When I was in Mexico, I became ___ to having people ___ what I said because I speak Spanish so poorly.

______
______ 3–4. I ___d having an boring afternoon at work, so I ___ed in the restaurant to make lunch last as long as possible. I was not at all eager° to return to the office.

______
______ 5–6. My son asked for *The Wizard of Oz* for his birthday, but he wasn't ____ about whether he wanted the book or the musical film ___.

______
______ 7–8. No one hates arguments more than Martin — he becomes ___ whenever they ___. Unfortunately, in his household, disputes° are abundant°.

______
______ 9–10. I am ___ to show you my story until I've had a chance to ___ it. It really needs considerable° changing before it will be good enough for anyone to read.

Related Words

Once you learn a new word, you can more easily understand many related words. Below are ten words related to the core words of this chapter. Use their definitions to help you write in the word that best completes each item.

a. **accustom**, *verb*	To get used to
b. **anticipation**, *noun*	The act of looking forward to something
c. **interpret**°, *verb*	To explain the meaning (of something)
d. **misery**, *noun*	Great unhappiness
e. **revision**, *noun*	An improved form of an earlier work

________________ 1. It is sad to think of how much ___ wars have caused.

________________ 2. The dog's ___ of going for a walk was clear — he sat by the door with a leash in his mouth.

________________ 3. I didn't understand what my blood-pressure numbers meant, so I asked the nurse to ___ them for me.

________________ 4. In his job as a security guard, James had to ___ himself to staying awake all night.

________________ 5. My writing teacher kept asking me to improve my paper. She finally accepted the third ___.

f. **interpretation**, *noun*	An explanation of the meaning or importance of something
g. **lingering**, *adjective*	Remaining; not leaving
h. **occurrence**, *noun*	An event; something that happened
i. **reluctance**, *noun*	The state of being unwilling to do something
j. **specify**, *verb*	To state exactly or in detail

________________ 6. In the personal ads, people looking for dates ___ their work, hobbies, and favorite activities.

________________ 7. There was a strange ___ at school today involving two students, a banana peel, and a can of red paint.

________________ 8. I understand Dad's ___ to ride roller coasters — I don't like to ride on them, either.

________________ 9. When Jack didn't show up at Emma's party, Emma's ___ was that he didn't want to run into his former girlfriend there.

________________ 10. The room was empty when I arrived, but the ___ smell of perfume told me that a woman had just left.

➣ *Analogies*

Each item below starts with a pair of words in CAPITAL LETTERS. For each item, figure out the relationship between these two words. Then decide which of the choices (*a*, *b*, *c*, or *d*) expresses a similar relationship. Write the letter of your choice on the answer line. (All the repeated words in these items are from this unit.)

____ 1. RELUCTANT : WILLING ::
- a. brutal : kind
- b. rapid : fast
- c. anger : argument
- d. shy : quiet

____ 2. MISERABLE : HAPPY ::
- a. awkward° : clumsy
- b. bright : shining
- c. current° : old-fashioned
- d. famous : brave

____ 3. LINGER : REMAIN ::
- a. purposely : accidentally
- b. complex° : simple
- c. fix : repair
- d. wait : depart

____ 4. ANTICIPATE : EXPECT ::
- a. recollect° : forget
- b. cause : effect
- c. explain: understand
- d. smash : break

____ 5. SPECIFIC : GENERAL ::
- a. unfamiliar : nervous
- b. eager° : unwilling
- c. shy : quiet
- d. bees : honey

____ 6. OCCUR : HAPPEN ::
- a. run : walk
- b. vanish° : disappear
- c. shout : whisper
- d. vague° : specific°

____ 7. REVISE : SENTENCE ::
- a. discipline° : punishment
- b. write : print
- c. sing: book
- d. propose° : suggestion

____ 8. OBJECTION° : APPROVAL ::
- a. doctor : illness
- b. night : moon
- c. emphasis : importance
- d. argument : agreement

____ 9. MISINTERPRET : MISUNDERSTAND ::
- a. penalize° : punish
- b. expect : surprise
- c. agree : disagree
- d. discipline° : reward

____ 10. RECOLLECT° : EVENT ::
- a. question : answer
- b. interpret° : message
- c. walk : exercise
- d. establish° : destroy

Final Check

Read the passages carefully. Then fill in each blank with the word that best fits the context.

A. Knowing How to Argue

a. linger	b. misinterpret	c. occur
d. reluctant	e. specific	

Ron and Marlene have a great marriage, and I think one reason is that they know how to argue. Many couples think arguing is bad, but I think they (1)____________________ what arguing really is. It can be a good way to settle problems. When couples are (2)____________________ to argue, they may not solve their problems, and their angry feelings can (3)____________________ for a long time. Ron and Marlene don't hesitate° to argue and get it over with. What's good about the way they argue is that they talk only about the (4)____________________ thing that made them angry. For example, if Marlene is angry that Ron isn't doing his share of the housework, that is all she talks about. She doesn't throw in, "And furthermore° — that new friend of yours from work is a jerk!" Knowing Ron and Marlene has taught me that arguments (5)____________________ in even the best marriages, and that they can make a good relationship stronger.

B. A Change of School, A Change of Heart

f. accustomed	g. anticipate	h. miserable
i. revise	j. version	

Matt and his family were moving, and Matt hated the whole idea. He had lived in Centerville his entire life and gone to school with the same group of friends. He had (6)____________________d graduating from Centerville High School and going to Centerville Community College. Now he was going to have to (7)____________________ his whole plan for the future, and he didn't like it a bit. "How can I ever become (8)____________________ to a new school?" he asked his parents. "Everyone will already know each other. I'll have no friends."

At first, it seemed that Matt was right. At his new high school, he walked around alone, not smiling or talking to anyone. Finally a friendly teacher advised° him to improve his attitude°. "I know you're feeling lonely and (9)____________________," he said. "But you look as though you hate this school and everyone in it. If you'll look a little friendlier, you will find new friends here." Matt decided to try. He began to talk to his classmates and take part in class. He even helped write a funny (10)____________________ of "Cinderella" that his Spanish class performed for the rest of the school. By New Year, Matt was able to tell his parents that he was starting to feel at home in his new school.

UNIT TWO: *Review*

The box at the right lists twenty-five words from Unit Two. Using the clues at the bottom of the page, fill in these words to complete the puzzle that follows.

abrupt
advise
astonish
awkward
brutal
consent
current
deprive
eager
eliminate
endure
establish
linger
miserable
objection
occur
potential
reliable
resort
revise
specific
ultimate
vague
vanish
variety

ACROSS

1. To take away from; keep from having or enjoying
4. Greatest; highest possible
7. To surprise greatly; amaze
10. To turn or go (to) for help; make use of ... for aid
12. Looking forward to ... with great interest or desire
14. Cruel; heartless
17. To get rid of; do away with
21. Modern; existing now; in general use or practice today
23. Clumsy; not graceful
24. To bring into being; set up
25. Able to be depended upon

DOWN

2. To disappear from sight
3. A number of different kinds; assortment
5. To put up with; bear impatiently
6. To agree to something
8. Definite; exact
9. To change in order to improve or to include new information
11. To happen; take place
13. A dislike; feeling of being against something
15. To give advice to; recommend
16. Very unhappy or uncomfortable
18. To delay leaving; remain
19. Sudden and unexpected
20. A natural ability that may or may not develop; possibility
22. Not clear; not exact; not definite

UNIT TWO: Test 1

PART A

Choose the word that best completes each item and write it in the space provided.

_______________ 1. My parents used to ___ me for misbehaving at the supper table by making me sit on the stairs, where I could hear the conversation but not take part in it.

a. interpret b. penalize c. revise d. originate

_______________ 2. It has been said that the practice of drinking tea ___ in China thousands of years ago when some tea leaves accidently blew into a pot of boiling water.

a. originated b. misinterpreted c. vanished d. recollected

_______________ 3. That restaurant doesn't accept reservations for small groups. The ___ number of people in your party must be five.

a. vague b. complex c. current d. minimum

_______________ 4. A beginning typist ___ often, while an experienced typist hits the keys rapidly.

a. advises b. hesitates c. occurs d. endures

_______________ 5. My sister-in-law knows a lot about cars, so I've asked her to ___ me as I decide which one to buy.

a. cry out b. deprive c. recollect d. advise

_______________ 6. I try to ___ my friendship with Sarah, but it's difficult to keep a relationship going when we're separated by so many miles.

a. maintain b. revise c. respond d. deprive

_______________ 7. It used to be taught in schools that George Washington cut down a cherry tree with an ax and then confessed the deed to his father. However, ___ thinking is that the story was invented after Washington died.

a. horizontal b. reluctant c. current d. vague

_______________ 8. Garlic is delicious, but many people have an ___ to the way it makes one's breath smell.

a. objection b. potential c. version d. variety

_______________ 9. When Mona's children behave badly, she does not spank them; instead, she ___ them of something they enjoy, such as their bicycles or roller skates.

a. resorts b. endures c. proposes d. deprives

_______________ 10. Although my car is old, it is still ___; it gets me to work every day.

a. abrupt b. reliable c. miserable d. ultimate

(Continues on next page)

_______________ 11. We stared at the long brownish ___ thing floating in the river, wondering if it was a log or an alligator.

a. horizontal b. accustomed c. adequate d. wholesome

_______________ 12. At the town meeting, several people had ideas about what to do with the empty supermarket building. One woman ___ that it be turned into a skating rink.

a. vanished b. resorted c. endured d. proposed

_______________ 13. Playing outdoors for hours is more ___ than watching TV for hours.

a. reluctant b. awkward c. eager d. wholesome

PART B

Write **C** if the italicized word is used **correctly**. Write **I** if the word is used **incorrectly**.

____ 14. "To *misinterpret* my instructions," said the teacher, "listen carefully."

____ 15. The famous ballet dancer is *awkward*; he moves so lightly his feet seem to never touch the ground.

____ 16. It was *customary* for people to smile at each other in Laura's small town. Although she now lives in a large city, she still smiles at every stranger that she passes.

____ 17. I think it is *brutal* to keep chickens in crowded conditions and then cut off their beaks to keep them from pecking one another.

____ 18. If you want to gain weight, you can *eliminate* more calories in your diet by adding nuts and olive oil to your meals.

____ 19. I'm so *accustomed* to living near the fire department that whenever a siren goes off, I hardly notice.

____ 20. The angry diner called the restaurant manager and complained that her meal had been cold, *adequate*, and too expensive.

____ 21. Many people in town were angry when the beautiful old courthouse was *established* in order to make room for an ugly, new shopping center.

____ 22. The directions Kim gave me to the new apartment were so *vague* that I got very mixed up on my way there.

____ 23. Because her husband was sick and couldn't work, Corinne *appealed* to their landlady for extra time to pay the rent.

____ 24. The *ultimate* job in a successful business career might be running errands in a large office.

____ 25. Our store is well thought of because we put an *emphasis* on pleasing customers rather than on making as many sales as possible in a day.

Score (Number correct) ________ × 4 = ________%

Enter your score above and in the vocabulary performance chart on the inside back cover of the book.

UNIT TWO: Test 2

PART A

Complete each item with a word from the box. Use each word once.

a. **abrupt**	b. **anticipate**	c. **classify**	d. **consent**	e. **discipline**
f. **exclaim**	g. **potential**	h. **recollect**	i. **resort**	j. **revise**
k. **specific**	l. **vanish**	m. **variety**		

________________ 1. Every time Robert takes a girl out, he thinks about whether she has the ___ to be a good wife.

________________ 2. Wouldn't it be wonderful if dirt ___ed as easily and completely in real life as it does in the soap ads?

________________ 3. The Four Corners of the World Restaurant offers dishes from a ___ of countries, including France, Vietnam, Ethiopia, and Brazil.

________________ 4. To ___ him for writing on the wall of a school bathroom, the principal made Matt paint every bathroom on that floor.

________________ 5. Although Ed has a hot temper, I don't think he would ever ___ to violence.

________________ 6. Because we had ___d eight people for dinner, we were surprised when twelve showed up.

________________ 7. Ronald always shows his short stories to his wife and then ___s them after listening to her comments.

________________ 8. When you write out the directions for me, please include the ___ streets I have to turn on.

________________ 9. The picnic came to an ___ end when a sudden thunderstorm seemed to come out of nowhere.

________________ 10. In high school, students often ___ one another as belonging to an in-group or an out-group.

________________ 11. "I will ___ to your getting a puppy," Mrs. Anders told her children, "*if* you promise that you will take care of walking, feeding, brushing, and housetraining it."

________________ 12. Sandra didn't want to hurt her boyfriend's feelings when she unwrapped the ugly orange sweater he had bought her, so she ___ed, "Wow, it's so colorful!"

________________ 13. I was so tired last night that although I ___ talking with John, I can't remember what either of us said.

(Continues on next page)

PART B

Write **C** if the italicized word is used **correctly**. Write **I** if the word is used **incorrectly**.

_____ 14. When the man shook hands with the child and said, "How do you do?" the child *responded*, "How do I do what?"

_____ 15. Bart was sad when his best friend moved *furthermore* from his house.

_____ 16. It was fun to go to my first soccer game with Franco. He knows the sport so well that he could *interpret* everything that was going on for me.

_____ 17. Rico didn't seem to enjoy the party — he *lingered* before most of the other guests had even shown up.

_____ 18. The students were *miserable* when their teacher said, "It's such a beautiful day — let's forget about the math test and go outside to play softball."

_____ 19. Christmas and New Year's Eve are two holidays that *occur* in December.

_____ 20. Naturally, most people are *reluctant* to win an all-expenses-paid vacation.

_____ 21. Which *version* of *The Wizard of Oz* did you like better, the movie with Judy Garland or the one with Diana Ross?

_____ 22. The speaker *astonished* the audience by opening his speech with, "Good evening, and thank you all for coming."

_____ 23. Because the novel is so *complex*, it begins with a chart that lists all the characters and shows how they are related to one another.

_____ 24. To get through exam week, I had to *endure* several nights without much sleep.

_____ 25. After hiking for miles with nothing to eat, the friends were *eager* for dinner.

Score (Number correct) ________ × 4 = ________%

Enter your score above and in the vocabulary performance chart on the inside back cover of the book.

UNIT TWO: Test 3

PART A: Synonyms

In the space provided, write the letter of the choice that is most nearly the **same** in meaning as the **boldfaced** word.

____ 1. **advise** a) give advice to b) expect c) praise d) forget

____ 2. **anticipate** a) put up with b) remember c) dislike d) expect

____ 3. **appeal** a) ask b) add to c) disappear d) explain

____ 4. **astonish** a) continue b) surprise c) refuse d) begin

____ 5. **classify** a) make clear b) arrange by type c) begin d) put up with

____ 6. **deprive** a) suggest b) turn to c) take from d) forget

____ 7. **discipline** a) punish b) raise up c) continue d) happen

____ 8. **eliminate** a) add to b) get rid of c) disappear d) make more difficult

____ 9. **emphasis** a) least b) importance c) retelling d) possibility

____ 10. **endure** a) punish b) demand c) put up with d) explain

____ 11. **establish** a) remain b) start c) turn to d) suggest

____ 12. **furthermore** a) instead b) later c) in addition d) by the way

____ 13. **interpret** a) explain b) depend on c) suggest d) change

____ 14. **maintain** a) begin b) continue c) give up on d) cry out

____ 15. **misinterpret** a) understand wrongly b) argue c) depend on d) surprise

____ 16. **occur** a) begin b) put off c) take place d) remember

____ 17. **potential** a) memory b) feeling c) possibility d) number

____ 18. **propose** a) wait b) make worse c) agree d) suggest

____ 19. **resort to** a) turn to b) give away c) accept as true d) refuse

____ 20. **respond** a) disappear b) answer c) surprise d) remember

____ 21. **revise** a) throw out b) remain c) agree d) change

____ 22. **specific** a) common b) least c) exact d) important

____ 23. **ultimate** a) least b) most strange c) greatest d) newest

____ 24. **variety** a) value b) reason c) few d) several different kinds

____ 25. **version** a) retelling b) dislike c) assortment d) penalty

(Continues on next page)

PART B: Antonyms

In the space provided, write the letter of the choice that is most nearly **opposite** in meaning to the **boldfaced** word.

____26. **abrupt** a) slow b) willing c) secret d) scary

____27. **accustomed** a) not exact b) not similar to c) not used to d) not needed

____28. **adequate** a) willing b) not enough c) not dependable d) unhappy

____29. **awkward** a) up and down b) polite c) complicated d) graceful

____30. **brutal** a) well-known b) shaky c) gentle d) dark

____31. **complex** a) cheerful b) simple c) lucky d) natural

____32. **consent** a) surprise b) reward c) appear d) refuse

____33. **current** a) wise b) old-fashioned c) unusual d) common

____34. **customary** a) willing b) most c) clear d) unusual

____35. **eager** a) not interested b) not believing c) ready d) clear

____36. **exclaim** a) refuse b) forget c) allow d) whisper

____37. **hesitate** a) ignore b) suggest c) rush ahead d) reward

____38. **horizontal** a) careless b) up and down c) dark d) square

____39. **linger** a) appear b) insult c) forget d) hurry away

____40. **minimum** a) unhealthy b) loud c) painful d) most

____41. **miserable** a) hard to understand b) happy c) willing d) clear

____42. **objection** a) approval b) joke c) win d) loss

____43. **originate** a) end b) explain c) leave d) expect

____44. **penalize** a) hurry b) reward c) give d) appear

____45. **recollect** a) answer b) ask c) know d) forget

____46. **reliable** a) not known b) not enough c) not usual d) not dependable

____47. **reluctant** a) surprised b) least c) willing d) careless

____48. **vague** a) lowest b) not clumsy c) clear d) not exact

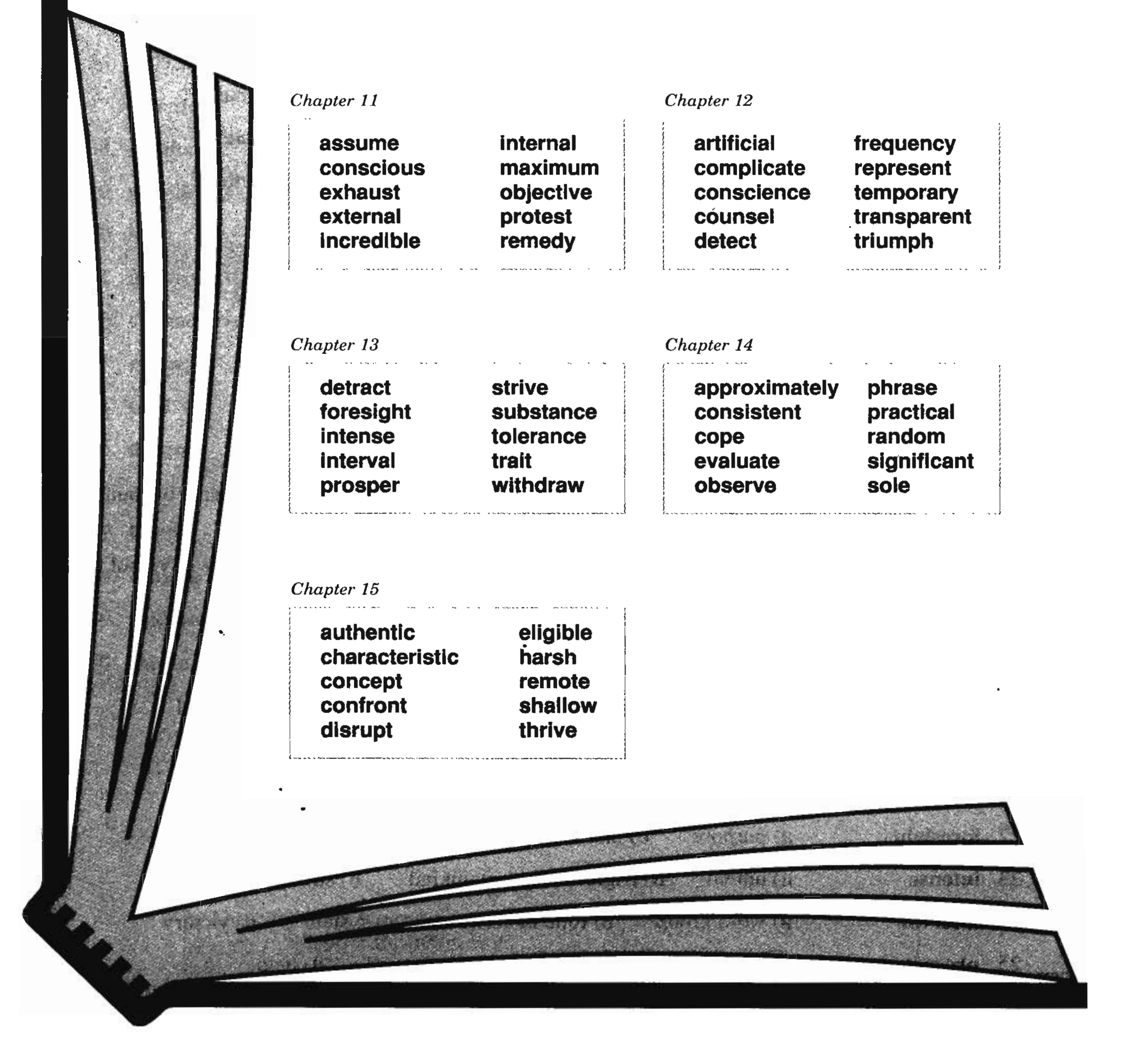
____49. **vanish** a) expect b) keep c) appear d) wait

____50. **wholesome** a) unhealthy b) simple c) useful d) old-fashioned

Score (Number correct) ________ × 2 = ________%

Enter your score above and in the vocabulary performance chart on the inside back cover of the book.

Unit Three



Chapter 11
assume
conscious
exhaust
external
incredible
internal
maximum
objective
protest
remedy
Chapter 12
artificial
complicate
conscience
counsel
detect
frequency
represent
temporary
transparent
triumph
Chapter 13
detract
foresight
intense
interval
prosper
strive
substance
tolerance
trait
withdraw
Chapter 14
approximately
consistent
cope
evaluate
observe
phrase
practical
random
significant
sole
Chapter 15
authentic
characteristic
concept
confront
disrupt
eligible
harsh
remote
shallow
thrive

Unit Three: *Pretest*

In the space provided, write the letter of the choice that is closest in meaning to the **boldfaced** word.

____ 1. **assume** a) suppose to be true b) prove to be false c) hold no opinion about (something) d) argue hotly

____ 2. **conscious** a) drowsy b) awake c) depressed d) purposeful

____ 3. **exhaust** a) refill b) remove from sight c) use up d) fall

____ 4. **external** a) buried deeply b) outer c) unimportant d) common

____ 5. **incredible** a) unbelievable b) showy c) humble d) wasteful

____ 6. **internal** a) inner b) uncommon c) easy d) understood by few

____ 7. **maximum** a) not popular b) greatest in amount c) worst d) comfortable

____ 8. **objective** a) bad influence b) reason to believe c) insult d) goal

____ 9. **protest** a) speak out against b) encourage c) prove d) debate

____ 10. **remedy** a) source of amusement b) usual manner of doing something c) collection of writings d) cure

____ 11. **artificial** a) natural b) impressive c) not natural d) worn out

____ 12. **complicate** a) smooth over b) adjust c) make difficult d) divide

____ 13. **conscience** a) sense of being awake b) inability to decide c) sense of right and wrong d) skill with numbers

____ 14. **counsel** a) improve b) approve c) give advice d) revise

____ 15. **detect** a) obtain b) complain c) remark d) notice

____ 16. **frequency** a) how often something happens b) rate of speed c) volume of sound d) source of sound

____ 17. **represent** a) avoid talking about b) prefer over another choice c) be a symbol for d) allow to happen

____ 18. **temporary** a) expected to last forever b) impossible to achieve c) serving for a limited time d) clearly seen

____ 19. **transparent** a) solid b) dark in color c) seen through easily d) unusual

____ 20. **triumph** a) victory b) defeat c) compromise d) battle

____ 21. **detract** a) take away b) grow c) speed up d) pass by

____ 22. **foresight** a) purpose b) understanding c) cure d) careful planning

____ 23. **intense** a) unreal b) frightened c) unkind d) strong

____ 24. **interval** a) word group b) time in between c) system d) victory

____ 25. **prosper** a) do poorly b) become old c) succeed d) help

(Continues on next page)

____ 26. **strive** a) do well b) take away c) feel good d) try hard

____ 27. **substance** a) care b) knowledge c) material d) hard work

____ 28. **tolerance** a) acceptance b) avoidance c) experience d) confusion

____ 29. **trait** a) story b) feature c) unexpected gift d) journey

____ 30. **withdraw** a) write down b) take back c) make shorter d) make happy

____ 31. **approximately** a) never b) under c) almost d) more than

____ 32. **consistent** a) made up of b) regular c) useful d) important

____ 33. **cope** a) measure b) look at c) deal with d) give up

____ 34. **evaluate** a) ignore b) use up c) judge d) take away

____ 35. **observe** a) watch closely b) disturb c) bring together d) control

____ 36. **phrase** a) period of time b) group of words c) highest point d) outer layer

____ 37. **practical** a) useful b) expensive c) silly d) unplanned

____ 38. **random** a) rare b) common c) expensive d) unplanned

____ 39. **significant** a) lucky b) available c) important d) busy

____ 40. **sole** a) delayed b) deep c) early d) only

____ 41. **authentic** a) real b) old c) expensive d) useful

____ 42. **characteristic** a) unexpected b) usual c) modern d) weird

____ 43. **concept** a) period of time b) goal c) memory d) idea

____ 44. **confront** a) succeed b) interrupt c) face d) ignore

____ 45. **disrupt** a) watch closely b) describe c) upset d) complain

____ 46. **eligible** a) qualified b) far away c) able to be read d) worthless

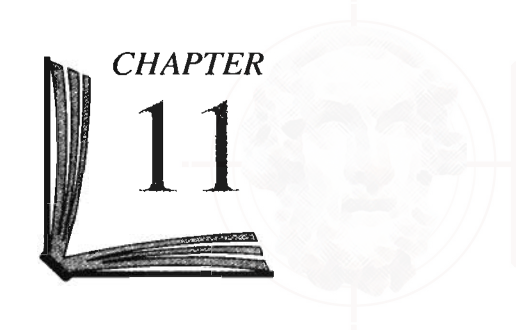
____ 47. **harsh** a) new b) loud c) fair d) cruel

____ 48. **remote** a) low b) far away c) unusual d) able to be moved

____ 49. **shallow** a) friendly b) solid c) not deep d) not strong

____ 50. **thrive** a) raise up b) do well c) grow weak d) need extra care

SCORE: (Number correct) ________ × 2 = __________ %



CHAPTER

11



assume	**internal**
conscious	**maximum**
exhaust	**objective**
external	**protest**
incredible	**remedy**

Ten Words in Context

In the space provided, write the letter of the meaning closest to that of each **boldfaced** word. Use the context of the sentences to help you figure out each word's meaning.

1 assume
/ə'sjuːm/
– verb

- I **assumed** he was telling the truth, but he wasn't.
- We **assumed** the sun would shine during the outdoor wedding — what a mistake! When it comes to weather, one must not take anything for granted.

___ *Assume* means a. to fear. b. to forget. c. to believe.

2 conscious
/'kɒnʃəs/
– adjective

- I don't think Jim is **conscious** that he sometimes seems very rude. Otherwise, he wouldn't be so ill-mannered.
- As Arlene gave her speech to the class, she was **conscious** that people were whispering in the back of the room.

___ *Conscious* means a. pleased. b. aware. c. relieved.

3 exhaust
/ɪg'zɔːst/
– verb

- The twelve-hour drive **exhausted** me so much that I couldn't even eat dinner before I went to bed.
- Chopping firewood all afternoon **exhausted** Ken. In fact, afterward, he collapsed on the sofa and fell asleep.

___ *Exhaust* means a. to delay. b. to teach. c. to tire.

4 external
/ɪk'stɜːnəl/
– adjective

- The **external** appearances of the two houses were similar, but on the inside, the homes differed quite a bit.
- When my grandmother first came to America, she was given her very first orange. Since no one had told her to remove its **external** layer, she began to eat the peel.

___ *External* means a. final. b. new. c. outer.

5 incredible
/ɪn'kredəbl/
– adjective

- The moon landing of 1969 was an **incredible** achievement.
- It's **incredible** that a cat could survive forty-three days locked in a crate without food and water, and yet it has happened.

___ *Incredible* means a. expected. b. hard to believe. c. correct.

6 internal
/ɪn'tɜːnəl/
– adjective

- The sofa's covering is torn, but its **internal** condition is fine.
- The car looks terrific, so you'd never guess that some of its **internal** parts — the motor, brakes, and heater — need major repair.

___ *Internal* means a. inside. b. hard. c. light in weight.

7 **maximum**
/ˈmæksɪməm/
– adjective

- The sign told the **maximum** weight the elevator could safely carry.
- Three hundred miles per hour is the **maximum** speed for this airplane; it can go no faster.

___*Maximum* means a. greatest. b. worst. c. longest.

8 **objective**
/əbˈdʒektɪv/
– noun

- The **objective** of the workshop on time management is to teach people to get the most done in the least amount of time.
- Chris and Tomas realized they could not be business partners. Chris's **objective** was to make a lot of money, while Tomas's was to help people in the community.

___*Objective* means a. cost. b. goal. c. excuse.

9 **protest**
/prəʊˈtest/
– verb

- When a man was discovered beating his dogs, an animal-rights group **protested**.
- "Stop it," Billy's mother **protested**. "You can't pour blue food coloring into the mashed potatoes."

___*Protest* means a. to ask. b. to suggest. c. to complain.

10 **remedy**
/ˈremɪdɪ/
– noun

- Grandma's **remedy** for a cold was to wear garlic around her neck. It never cured her cold, but at least no one came close enough to her to catch it.
- There's no quick **remedy** for a broken heart; only time will heal it.

___*Remedy* means a. memory. b. treatment. b. main cause.

Matching Words with Definitions

Following are definitions of the ten words. **Print** each word next to its definition. If you look closely at each word in context, you will be able to figure out its meaning.

1. ______________________ A cure; something that heals
2. ______________________ Unbelievable; amazing; extraordinary
3. ______________________ Aware (of something); noticing (that something is or was happening or existing)
4. ______________________ Outer; located outside
5. ______________________ To complain; express dissatisfaction
6. ______________________ A purpose; goal
7. ______________________ To suppose to be true; take for granted
8. ______________________ To tire greatly
9. ______________________ Inner; located inside
10. ______________________ Most; highest; largest possible

CAUTION: Do not go any further until you are sure the above answers are correct. Then you can use the definitions to help you in the following practices. Your goal is eventually to know the words well enough so that you don't need to check the definitions at all.

➣ *Sentence Check 1*

Using the answer line, complete each item below with the correct word from the box.

a. **assume**	b. **conscious**	c. **exhaust**	d. **external**	e. **incredible**
f. **internal**	g. **maximum**	h. **objective**	i. **protest**	j. **remedy**

________ 1. The ___ part of a banana is its sweet, creamy flesh.

________ 2. The ___ part of a banana is its peel.

________ 3. The ___ speed allowed here is sixty-five miles an hour.

________ 4. Do you think there will ever be a ___ for the common cold?

________ 5. The Grand Canyon is the most ___ sight I've ever seen. It's so huge that it's hard to believe even when you're standing right there looking at it.

________ 6. As Shelly tried to study, she became ___ of a loud "drip, drip" from the kitchen faucet.

________ 7. My sister's ___ is to be a fashion designer.

________ 8. If you don't like a company's policy, why not ___? For example, you could write a strong letter of complaint.

________ 9. Rather than ___ it would not rain on our outdoor wedding, we rented a large tent, just in case.

________ 10. Mental work can ___ someone as much as physical work.

➣ *Sentence Check 2*

Using the answer lines, complete each item below with **two** words from the box.

____
________ 1–2. "You walk too fast!" Linda ___ed to her long-legged brother. "You'll ___ me before we go two blocks!"

____
________ 3–4. Although the accident victim had only a few ___ bruises, he had serious ___ injuries, including damage to his kidneys.

____
________ 5–6. It's ___ that penicillin, a ___ for various infections, was discovered by accident after some mold grew in a laboratory dish.

____
________ 7–8. I had ___d that my coworkers enjoyed the music in our office, but they said they were not even ___ of it. However, once when the music ceased°, everyone suddenly became very aware of the silence.

____
________ 9–10. Jill's ___ for the summer is to earn the ___ amount of money possible, so she has two jobs. What a contrast° between her and her brother! He's putting in the minimum° number of hours allowed where he works and going to the beach as much as possible.

Related Words

Once you learn a new word, you can more easily understand many related words. Below are ten words related to the core words of this chapter. Use their definitions to help you write in the word that best completes each item.

a. **consciousness**, *noun*	The state of being awake
b. **internally**, *adverb*	Beneath the surface; on the inside
c. **protester**, *noun*	Someone who speaks out against something
d. **remedial**, *adjective*	Meant to improve one's skills or knowledge
e. **self-conscious**, *adjective*	Uncomfortably aware of one's behavior or appearance

__________ 1. Carlo's grades have gone up in every subject since he took a ___ reading course.

__________ 2. I fell down the front steps, knocked my head, and lost ___; when I woke up, I was back in my house.

__________ 3. Although Marie managed to act pleasant during the party, ___ she was extremely angry. Her boyfriend had gotten drunk and was quite obnoxious°.

__________ 4. A meeting about abortion, sex education in schools, or another topic that lots of people disagree about is sure to attract some ___s. Most people are not neutral° about such widely discussed topics — they have strong feelings one way or the other.

__________ 5. When Rodney first moved from Georgia to New York City, he felt ___ about his Southern accent. At times he was even reluctant° to speak.

f. **assumption**, *noun*	A belief; something that is considered to be true
g. **credible**, *adjective*	Believeable
h. **creed**, *noun*	A formal statement of religious beliefs
i. **exhaustion**, *noun*	A state of being extremely tired
j. **maximize**, *verb*	To make as great as possible

__________ 6. For many centuries, it was a common ___ that the Earth was flat.

__________ 7. Gina ___s the buying power of her dollars by shopping for good bargains.

__________ 8. I'm not accustomed° to giving money to people on the street, but sometimes it's hard to turn down a person whose hard-luck story seems ___.

__________ 9. When I first went to my friend's church, she explained to me her religion's ___.

__________ 10. After he'd battled a blaze for nearly twenty-four hours, the firefighter's ___ was so great that he fell asleep without even taking off his boots.

Word Parts

A. The prefix *self-* often means "oneself."

Examples:	*defense* — protection	*conscious* — aware
	self-defense — protection of oneself	*self-conscious* — uncomfortably aware of oneself

On each answer line, write the word from the box that means the same as the *italicized* words.

a. **self-centered**	b. **self-conscious**	c. **self-control**
d. **self-critical°**	e. **self-educated**	

______ 1. Corey is so *critical of oneself.* He must have a low opinion of himself.

______ 2. It takes *control of oneself* not to eat too many fresh, warm chocolate-chip cookies.

______ 3. That writer is so *centered on himself!* After talking about himself for an hour, he said, "But enough about me. What do you think of my writing?"

______ 4. Irene felt uncomfortably *conscious of herself* because of her new hair color, so she was relieved when most people didn't even notice it.

______ 5. My grandfather was an *educated-by-oneself* man; although he didn't even attend high school, he learned a great deal on his own.

B. The suffix *-ness* means "the quality or state of."

Examples: *wholesome°* — tending to improve the character, mind, or body
wholesomeness — the quality of tending to improve the character, mind, or body

Examples: *conscious* — aware
consciousness — the state of being aware

On each answer line, write the word from the box that best completes the item.

f. **awkwardness°**	g. **consciousness**	h. **eagerness°**
i. **usefulness**	j. **vagueness°**	

______ 6. With great ___, the family stood in line to enter Disneyland.

______ 7. The accident victim lost ___ and did not wake up for several days.

______ 8. Because they are growing so rapidly, many teenagers go through a period of ___ when it seems they are forever tripping over their own feet.

______ 9. This camping knife is really wonderful for its ________. It provides a screwdriver, toothpick, bottle-opener, magnifying glass, and tweezers.

______ 10. The ___ of the instructions for putting this storage box together is driving me crazy. They are so unclear that I don't even know which side is up.

Final Check

Read the passages carefully. Then fill in each blank with the word that best fits the context.

A. Coming Out of a Coma

a. **exhaust**	b. **external**	c. **incredible**
d. **internal**	e. **remedy**	

"Hi, Mom," Francis said. The effort of speaking (1)____________________ed him, and he closed his eyes again.

To his mother, these were the best words she had ever heard. The idea that her son was speaking again, after ten weeks in a coma, was (2)____________________. He had been gone from this world for so long that it seemed he'd never return. Those ten weeks had been difficult to endure°. Whenever Ms. King had visited Francis at the hospital, he had been completely still. There were no (3)____________________ signs that he was thinking or feeling anything. He was, as the doctors put it, "a vegetable." But Ms. King maintained° the hope that he still had some (4)____________________ life. Could he, perhaps, hear her words? Could he feel her hand squeezing his? She tried to reach him in any way she could during her daily visits.

Now, although Ms. King knew there was no quick (5)____________________ for her son's serious injuries, the simple words "Hi, Mom" gave her hope that he could, someday, live a full life again.

B. The Office Doughnut Contest

f. **assume**	g. **conscious**	h. **maximum**
i. **objective**	j. **protest**	

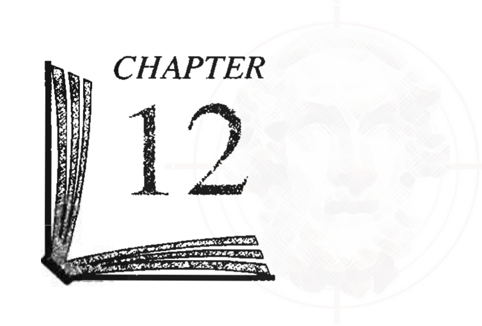
"Are you telling me there are no doughnuts left? I don't believe it!" Joan said. "How could a huge supply of doughnuts be gone already?"

"I don't know how," Fran responded°. "I just know none are left."

"When I brought three dozen doughnuts in this morning, I (6)____________________d I'd get to eat at least one," Joan said. "After all, the (7)____________________ number of people who ever work in this place is ten. Today, Sue isn't even here. It's hard to believe that the other eight of you could eat thirty-six doughnuts in less than three hours. I even expected to have surplus° doughnuts for tomorrow."

Then Fran and Joan became (8)____________________ of laughing in the office next door. When they looked in, the fate of the missing doughnuts became evident°. Three grown men were tossing doughnuts across the room. Their (9)____________________ was to throw the doughnuts onto the pencils held up by three other grown men.

"I don't believe you guys!" Joan (10)____________________ed. "Just you wait. Next time it's my turn to bring in the doughnuts, I'll bring in cream- and jelly-filled doughnuts, and we'll see how you play your little game then."




CHAPTER 12

artificial	**frequency**
complicate	**represent**
conscience	**temporary**
counsel	**transparent**
detect	**triumph**

Ten Words in Context

In the space provided, write the letter of the meaning closest to that of each **boldfaced** word. Use the context of the sentences to help you figure out each word's meaning.

1 **artificial** /ɑːtɪˈfɪʃəl/ – *adjective*

- My uncle, who lost his left arm in an accident, was recently fitted for an **artificial** arm.
- **Artificial** flowers made of paper or silk last for years.

___ *Artificial* means a. short-term. b. made by humans. c. heavy.

2 **complicate** /ˈkɒmplɪkeɪt/ – *verb*

- Cooking for a crowd is difficult enough, so I don't **complicate** the job with fancy dishes. I keep the food simple.
- Don't **complicate** the game with too many rules.

___ *Complicate* means a. to make difficult. b. to find. c. to remember.

3 **conscience** /ˈkɒnʃəns/ – *noun*

- After Lena stole the compact disk, her **conscience** bothered her so much that she couldn't enjoy listening to the music.
- It's strange but true that some criminals don't have a **conscience**. They really don't believe that it is wrong to cheat, steal, or even kill.

___ *Conscience* means a. budget. b. plan of action. c. moral sense.

4 **counsel** /ˈkaʊnsəl/ – *verb*

- My basketball coach **counseled** me to work at the shoe store fewer hours each week to gain more time to study.
- I **counseled** Angela to break up with her violent boyfriend.

___ *Counsel* means a. to allow. b. to join. c. to suggest to.

5 **detect** /dɪˈtekt/ – *verb*

- If you **detect** a gas leak, leave immediately and call for help.
- Rachel never actually says that she dislikes Ron, but I **detect** a tone of dislike in her voice.

___ *Detect* means a. to control. b. to notice. c. to want.

6 **frequency** /ˈfriːkwənsɪ/ – *noun*

- Luis and Adam used to visit each other once or twice a week, but since Adam got married, the **frequency** of their visits has gone down.
- I don't like to watch movies on TV because the **frequency** of ads is so great. I prefer to rent movies and see them without all the interruptions.

___ *Frequency* means a. rate. b. cost. c. action.

7 **represent** /ˌreprɪˈzent/ – *verb*

- Will you speak for yourself in court, or will a lawyer **represent** you?
- Loretta will **represent** her class at the Student Council meetings.

___ *Represent* means a. to leave. b. to hire. c. to speak for.

8 **temporary** /ˈtempərərɪ/ – *adjective*

- Mimi used a **temporary** green hair dye just for St. Patrick's Day.
- A **temporary** worker will be hired to fill in for Kwan until she recovers from her injury.

___ *Temporary* means a. large. b. short-term. c. false.

9 **transparent** /træns'pærənt/ – *adjective*

- At first, I thought the glass in the door was **transparent** and that I was seeing someone on the other side. But when I got closer, I realized that it was a mirror and I was looking at myself.
- **Transparent** wrap allows you to see what's inside a container.

___ *Transparent* means a. able to be seen through. b. old. c. thick.

10 **triumph** /ˈtraɪəmf/ – *noun*

- Our football team's **triumph** over the state's first-place team was the reason for a huge party.
- My brother's good teachers, his understanding parents, and his own hard work all led to his **triumph** over a learning disability.

___ *Triumph* means a. loss. b. meeting. c. win.

Matching Words with Definitions

Following are definitions of the ten words. **Print** each word next to its definition. If you look closely at each word in context, you will be able to figure out its meaning.

1. ______________ Allowing light to pass through so that objects on the other side can be seen
2. ______________ To give advice or guidance to; advise°
3. ______________ How often something happens
4. ______________ To notice; discover that something exists or is present
5. ______________ An outstanding or very satisfying success; victory
6. ______________ A sense of what is right or wrong in one's behavior
7. ______________ To act or speak for
8. ______________ To make difficult by adding or involving many parts or details; make complex°
9. ______________ Lasting or serving for a limited time only; not permanent
10. ______________ Made to imitate something natural

CAUTION: Do not go any further until you are sure the above answers are correct. Then you can use the definitions to help you in the following practices. Your goal is eventually to know the words well enough so that you don't need to check the definitions at all.

➣ *Sentence Check 1*

Using the answer line, complete each item below with the correct word from the box.

a. artificial	**b. complicate**	**c. conscience**	**d. counsel**	**e. detect**
f. frequency	**g. represent**	**h. temporary**	**i. transparent**	**j. triumph**

__________ 1. Beating the first-place team was a greater ___ for the players than winning over the last-place team.

__________ 2. That horror movie must have used gallons of ___ blood.

__________ 3. How many hours a week would you ___ a student to work?

__________ 4. The ___ of our company newsletter is about once a month.

__________ 5. If you ___ a job, you make it harder to do.

__________ 6. A person who is cruel must not have much of a ___.

__________ 7. Substitute teachers get ___ assignments, often for only a day or two at a time.

__________ 8. Elected officials are supposed to ___ the voters.

__________ 9. In the winter, we put sheets of ___ plastic over our windows to help keep out the cold.

__________ 10. Although Norah has lived in New York for years, I can still ___ a slight Southern accent in her voice.

➣ *Sentence Check 2*

Using the answer lines, complete each item below with **two** words from the box.

__________ 1–2. To reduce the ___ of infections, people should be ___ed to wash their
__________ hands often and well. They should also be advised° to keep counters and cutting boards free of bacteria.

__________ 3–4. If your ___ won't allow you to wear real fur, choose ___ fur instead.
__________ Fake fur looks great and feels good, too!

__________ 5–6. I lost ten pounds last year. That was a great victory, but my ___ was
__________ only ___. I've gained every ounce of it back.

__________ 7–8. The eyes are sometimes called "the windows of the soul," as if they
__________ were ___ and one could ___ a person's soul by looking into them.

__________ 9–10. The Block Association worked well when it ___ed only the residents
__________ of our street, but it has ___d matters by trying to speak for other parts of the neighborhood as well.

➣ *Related Words*

Once you learn a new word, you can more easily understand many related words. Below are ten words related to the core words of this chapter. Use their definitions to help you write in the word that best completes each item.

a. **artificially**, *adverb*	Unnaturally
b. **complication**, *noun*	An added detail that causes confusion or difficulty
c. **conscientious**, *adjective*	Careful about following one's sense of right and wrong
d. **transparency**, *noun*	A picture viewed by shining light through it
e. **triumphant**, *adjective*	Winning

____________ 1. If you ask me, planning a birthday party is difficult enough; trying to make it a surprise party is an unnecessary ___.

____________ 2. My nephew's favorite watermelon bubble gum is ___ colored and flavored — it looks like a neon sign and tastes like nothing on Earth, least of all watermelon.

____________ 3. When their team scored the winning touchdown, the ___ players hugged each other and jumped up and down. The other team, feeling miserable°, walked away with their heads down.

____________ 4. Professor Ives illustrated her lecture by using an overhead ___ of some important charts.

____________ 5. Raul is a ___ parent — he works hard at being a good father and takes his responsibilities very seriously. He is a good example to his children and never disciplines° them with violence.

f. **counselor**, *noun*	A person in the profession of giving advice or guidance
g. **detective**, *noun*	Someone whose job is to find the information needed to solve crimes
h. **frequent**, *adjective*	Appearing often; regular
i. **representative**, *noun*	A person who speaks for someone else
j. **temporarily**, *adverb*	For a short time; not permanently

____________ 6. When their homes were damaged by a flood, many families were housed ___ at a local army base.

____________ 7. My wife and I are considering divorce, but we've decided to see a marriage ___ and try to find a way to stay together.

____________ 8. The most famous ___ in the world is Sherlock Holmes. He solves murder cases by noticing small but important details. He is also able to analyze° events and come to brilliant conclusions.

____________ 9. If you feel strongly about a public issue, don't hesitate° to write to your ___ in Congress; remember that he or she was elected to speak for you.

____________ 10. Airlines offer special discounts to "___ fliers," people who travel often.

➢ *Synonyms and Antonyms*

A. Synonyms. Write the letter of the word or phrase that most nearly means the **same** as each boldfaced word.

____ 1. **conscience**

a. rate
b. talent
c. moral sense
d. victory

____ 2. **counsel**

a. win
b. make difficult
c. give advice to
d. imitate

____ 3. **detect**

a. act for
b. ignore
c. disapprove
d. notice

____ 4. **frequency**

a. how often something happens
b. allowing light to pass through
c. difficulty
d. short time

____ 5. **represent**

a. imitate
b. discover
c. speak for
d. succeed

B. Antonyms. Write the letter of the word or phrase that most nearly means the **opposite** of each boldfaced word.

____ 6. **artificial**

a. new
b. easy
c. natural
d. old

____ 7. **complicate**

a. lose
b. make easier
c. ignore
d. pay attention to

____ 8. **temporary**

a. easy
b. light-blocking
c. important
d. lasting forever

____ 9. **transparent**

a. blocking out light
b. natural
c. easy
d. long-lasting

____ 10. **triumph**

a. darkness
b. loss
c. success
d. game

➣ *Final Check*

Read the passages carefully. Then fill in each blank with the word that best fits the context.

A. The People's Choice

a. conscience	**b. frequency**	**c. represent**
d. temporary	**e. triumph**	

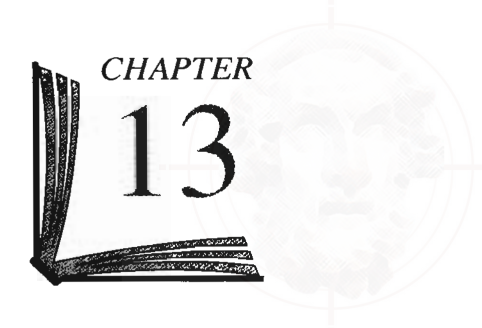
Suppose you are a candidate running for public office — and you win. What a (1)______________________! But now consider this: What is the best way to (2)______________________ those who voted for you? How do you know what "the people" want? Sometimes the great (3)______________________ of letters and phone calls makes you think you know what all the people want. Think again! For most people, interest in what their elected officials are doing is only (4)______________________; you will never hear from many of them again. Also, of course, the voters who don't write or call may feel differently from those who do. All right, then, you say, I'll just act according to my own (5)______________________ and do what I think is right. Not so fast! Remember that you're supposed to be "the people's choice." So what should you do? If you know the answer to that question, I propose° that you call the politicians in Washington immediately. They've been looking for the answer for over two hundred years.

B. The Christmas Wars

f. artificial	**g. complicate**	**h. counsel**
i. detect	**j. transparent**	

Christmas time is supposed to be peaceful, but in some families it renews old battles. One is the dispute° between those who like a sweet-smelling, natural Christmas tree and those who prefer a shiny (6)______________________ tree, with no pine needles to mess up the floor. Another common battle goes on between parents, who seek the best places to hide the gifts until the big day, and children, who search tirelessly to (7)______________________ clues about where those hiding places are. No matter what efforts a parent may make to (8)______________________ the search by shoving the gifts inside luggage or under three layers of linens, kids soon find them.

Then, of course, because the boxes and packages are not (9)______________________, the kids have to resort° to opening a corner of the wrapping. Or they try to determine° what's inside by shaking, bouncing, and rattling the box. Sooner or later, they make enough noise to catch an adult's attention. At this point the kids come out from behind the furnace or under the bed, trying very hard to look innocent. The parents get mad, the kids are in tears — Merry Christmas, everyone! It's hard to know how to (10)______________________ parents in this situation. Would the best advice be to ask Grandpa or Grandma to take the kids for a month or so?





detract	strive
foresight	substance
intense	tolerance
interval	trait
prosper	withdraw

Ten Words in Context

In the space provided, write the letter of the meaning closest to that of each **boldfaced** word. Use the context of the sentences to help you figure out each word's meaning.

1 **detract**
/dɪ'trækt/
– verb

- A headache can **detract** from even the most enjoyable experience.
- Eating with someone who slurps can **detract** from the pleasure of a good meal.

___ *Detract* means a. to grow. b. to pass. c. to take away.

2 **foresight**
/'fɔːsaɪt/
– noun

- Jen had the **foresight** to apply to several colleges, knowing that she might not get into the one she wanted most.
- People who are always late show a lack of **foresight**.

___ *Foresight* means a. wise planning. b. courage. c. strength.

3 **intense**
/ɪn'tens/
– adjective

- After hours in the blazing sun, the hikers felt **intense** thirst.
- Dad went to the emergency room because of **intense** pain in his lower back.

___ *Intense* means a. very great. b. unimportant. c. imaginary.

4 **interval**
/'ɪntəvəl/
– noun

- The **interval** between Christmas and New Year's Day is only a week.
- There was an **interval** of several hours between the births of the twins — in fact, they were born on separate days.

___ *Interval* means a. happiness. b. difference in importance. c. space.

5 **prosper**
/'prɒspə(r)/
– verb

- The company is so strong that it is expected to **prosper** even though similar companies are going out of business.
- Somone who always jumps from job to job is not likely to **prosper**.

___ *Prosper* means a. to believe. b. to do well. c. to take back.

6 **strive**
/straɪv/
– verb

- Many people **strive** to become movie stars, but few succeed.
- Every year, many mountain climbers **strive** to reach the top of Mount Qomolangma.

___ *Strive* means a. to make a mistake. b. to make a discovery. c. to make an effort.

7 **substance**
/ˈsʌbstəns/
– *noun*

- Snails leave a trail of a shiny **substance** everywhere they crawl.
- Gold is such a soft **substance** that it can be pounded into a very thin sheet.

___ *Substance* means a. material. b. light. c. force.

8 **tolerance**
/ˈtɒlərəns/
– *noun*

- The **tolerance** of our neighbors is obvious when you see children of different races playing together at their house.
- Because of the Johnsons' **tolerance**, their son-in-law's different religion is not a problem for the family.

___ *Tolerance* means a. planning. b. respect for others. c. financial success.

9 **trait**
/treɪ/
– *noun*

- My friend's nicest **trait** is her ability to laugh at herself.
- My worst **trait** is always worrying about what people think of me.

___ *Trait* means a. personal quality. b. goal. c. preparation.

10 **withdraw**
/wɪðˈdrɔː/
– *verb*

- When I realized I was working Thursday, I had to **withdraw** my offer to baby-sit for my sister's kids.
- "Please **withdraw** your fingers from my shoulder," the woman said to her coworker. "And keep your hands to yourself."

___ *Withdraw* means a. give. b. find. c. take back.

Matching Words with Definitions

Following are definitions of the ten words. **Print** each word next to its definition. If you look closely at each word in context, you will be able to figure out its meaning.

1. ______________ A quality or feature, as of personality, for which a person is known
2. ______________ Respect for the differing views, practices, and characteristics of others; freedom from prejudice
3. ______________ To take away something desirable (from); reduce the quality or value of
4. ______________ To take back (something or a statement); remove
5. ______________ Extreme in strength or degree; very strong
6. ______________ Care in planning or preparing for the future
7. ______________ The period of time between two events
8. ______________ To try hard
9. ______________ To succeed, especially financially
10. ______________ Physical material; matter of a particular type

CAUTION: Do not go any further until you are sure the above answers are correct. Then you can use the definitions to help you in the following practices. Your goal is eventually to know the words well enough so that you don't need to check the definitions at all.

➣ *Sentence Check 1*

Using the answer line, complete each item below with the correct word from the box.

a. **detract**	b. **foresight**	c. **intense**	d. **interval**	e. **prosper**
f. **strive**	g. **substance**	h. **tolerance**	i. **trait**	j. **withdraw**

________ 1. I wished I could ___ my angry words, but it was too late.

________ 2. That ugly vacant lot ___s from the beauty of the neighborhood.

________ 3. Shelby ___s to do well in all her classes.

________ 4. Patience is an important ___ for a preschool teacher.

________ 5. Budgeting requires the ___ to think of future expenses.

________ 6. Martin Luther King taught that all people should be viewed with ___, no matter what their race or religious beliefs.

________ 7. Barbara practices swimming for many hours each day, driven by her ___ desire to compete in the Olympics.

________ 8. There's an ___ of an hour between two of my classes today.

________ 9. The man was arrested after police saw him sell someone a white ___ in a plastic bag.

________ 10. At first, the Savings Mart didn't do well, but after it lowered its prices and increased its advertising, the store began to ___.

➣ *Sentence Check 2*

Using the answer lines, complete each item below with **two** words from the box.

____
________ 1–2. One of Paul's unpleasant ___s is that he has very little ___ for anyone who disagrees with his opinions.

____
________ 3–4. People who ___ tend to be individuals who ___ to do their jobs well, spend less than they earn, and save for the future.

____
________ 5–6. I like to watch a movie without interruption. Even the short ___ of a TV ad ___s from my enjoyment.

____
________ 7–8. After we drove to the beach and ran out into the ___ sunshine of midday, we realized that none of us had had the ___ to bring along sunblock lotion.

____
________ 9–10. The principal made two people ___ from school last term for being addicted to some ___ — for one it was alcohol, and for the other it was cocaine. They were counseled° to get professional help.

Related Words

Once you learn a new word, you can more easily understand many related words. Below are ten words related to the core words of this chapter. Use their definitions to help you write in the word that best completes each item.

a. **detractor**, *noun*	A critic; one who points out the bad points of something
b. **intensify**, *verb*	To make something stronger or more powerful
c. **intent**, *adjective*	Having the mind firmly set on a purpose
d. **prosperity**, *noun*	Financial success
e. **tolerant**, *adjective*	Willing to bear patiently (something not especially liked)

________________ 1. Jane was ___ of her daughter's having many pets until the girl brought home a giant spider. Then Jane finally said no.

________________ 2. If you give the dog food at the table, he won't stop begging — in fact, he will linger° at the table and ___ his begging.

________________ 3. Most people in the audience liked the school board's plan, but one ___ kept pointing out things that he thought were wrong with the plan.

________________ 4. People who are born into a life of ___ may find it hard to understand the problems of the poor.

________________ 5. Since she was in second grade, Lisa had been ___ upon becoming an airline pilot.

f. **insight**, *noun*	Understanding
g. **intensity**, *noun*	Great power
h. **prosperous**, *adjective*	Successful; well-off
i. **substantial**, *adjective*	Solidly built; not fragile°
j. **tolerate**, *verb*	To put up with; bear

________________ 6. Levi Strauss was a poor tailor until he became ___ by making and selling "Levi's" jeans.

________________ 7. Peter is a good counselor because he has so much ___ into why people do the things they do.

________________ 8. I'd like to hear my favorite band in concert, but I don't think I could ___ the crowds of people there.

________________ 9. The ___ of his hunger made it impossible for Bart to think of anything but food. He was conscious° of only his growling stomach.

________________ 10. In the children's story "The Three Little Pigs," the lazy pigs build houses of sticks and straw that are easy to destroy. But the hard-working pig wants to inhabit° a strong house, so he builds a ___ house of bricks.

Word Parts

A. The suffix *-ous* means "full of" or "having much."

Examples: *fury* — violent anger; *furious* — full of violent anger; *prosper* — to succeed financially; *prosperous* — having much financial success

On each answer line, write the word from the box that best completes the item.

a. **envious**	b. **famous**	c. **furious**
d. **joyous**	e. **prosperous**	

____________ 1. Elvis Presley is still very well known; in fact, he may be more ___ today than he was when he was alive.

____________ 2. During her latest fight with her boyfriend, Jill was so ___ that she threw a book at him.

____________ 3. Not many people "get rich quick" by winning the lottery; most of us have to work long and hard to become ___.

____________ 4. The wedding of my eighty-year-old grandmother was a ___ occasion for the family.

____________ 5. It is hard not to feel ___ of Paul, who seems to have everything good in life: a great marriage, a wonderful job, terrific kids, and lots of friends.

B. The suffix *-al* often means "the act of."

Examples: *deny* — to say that something is not true
denial — the act of saying that something is not true

refuse — to say "no" to doing or giving or accepting something
refusal — the act of saying "no" to something

On each answer line, write the word from the box that best completes the item.

f. **approval**	g. **betrayal°**	h. **denial**
i. **survival**	j. **withdrawal**	

____________ 6. The ___ of one thousand dollars from the man's bank account was unusual. He usually took out only fifty dollars or so.

____________ 7. Giving secret information to an enemy is a ___ of one's country.

____________ 8. My mother strongly believes in the soul's ___ after death, but my father believes there is nothing after death.

____________ 9. Mark's ___ that he had eaten the cookies surprised me because I noticed Oreo crumbs all over his bed.

____________ 10. We can't leave work early without our boss's ___.

Final Check

Read the passages carefully. Then fill in each blank with the word that best fits the context.

A. What's Your Type?

a. **intense**	b. **prosper**	c. **strive**
d. **tolerance**	e. **trait**	

If being stuck behind a slow-moving car drives you nuts or if you are often impatient with a friend's progress in completing a task, you may be what researchers classify° as a Type A personality. A (1)__________________ shared by Type A people is the desire to make effective use of time. They (2)__________________ to accomplish more in an hour than other people do in a day. A typical example of Type A behavior is the man who built a desk onto the front of his exercise bike. Sitting in front of the TV set, he could exercise, watch football, and pay bills all at the same time. Type A's often have little (3)__________________ for the calmer Type B people, who Type A's feel waste a lot of time. Naturally, Type A people often (4)__________________ financially, driven as they are to achieve the maximum° success at whatever they do. However, they also suffer from heart disease more often than the more relaxed Type B's. It seems that the Type A's (5)__________________ need for success creates a lot of tension, which causes damage to the body.

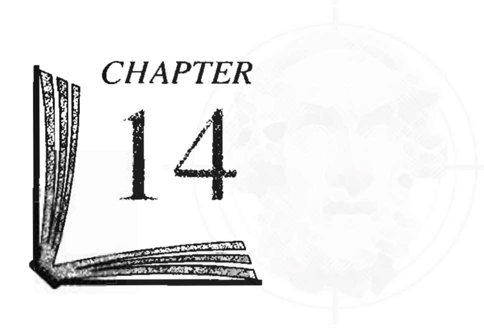
B. What a Circus!

f. **detract**	g. **foresight**	h. **interval**
i. **substance**	j. **withdraw**	

I didn't actually volunteer to go to the circus. I was sort of volunteered. My son Tommy was going with his first-grade class, and he told his teacher to sign me up. When I saw how eager° he was for me to accompany° his class, I couldn't (6)__________________ the offer.

So there I was, along with a handful of other parents and ninety excited six- and seven-year-olds. I don't really recollect° a great deal of the circus. What I do remember is the purple (7)__________________ that someone spilled on my sneaker, because it never washed off. I remember a lot about the inside of the bathroom, because I took so many children there. I remember washing cotton candy off a lot of faces, since I had the (8)__________________ to bring a box of baby wipes along. And I remember the boy who exclaimed°, "Oh, no!" and hid his face in my lap when an acrobat took a scary walk across a high horizontal° wire.

But nothing could (9)__________________ from the fun those kids had. To them, every act was a wonder. Even when the juggler dropped three of his four bowling pins, the kids thought he was great. Just watching all the activity exhausted° the children. In the brief (10)__________________ between our boarding the bus to go home and Tommy's falling asleep, he told me, "That was the bestest circus ever. You were really lucky to get to come along." Looking back at it all, I think I was, too.



CHAPTER 14



approximately	**phrase**
consistent	**practical**
cope	**random**
evaluate	**significant**
observe	**sole**

Ten Words in Context

In the space provided, write the letter of the meaning closest to that of each **boldfaced** word. Use the context of the sentences to help you figure out each word's meaning.

1 approximately /ə'prɒksɪmətlɪ/ – *adverb*

- A month is **approximately** thirty days long.
- The suspect in the murder case is a dark-haired white woman who is **approximately** forty years old.

___ *Approximately* means a. certainly. b. never. c. about.

2 consistent /kən'sɪstənt/ – *adjective*

- To be rated number one in tennis, a player must be a **consistent** winner, not a winner now and then.
- I would rather work for someone with a **consistent** manner than someone full of praise one day and screaming insults the next.

___ *Consistent* means a. steady. b. early. c. surprising.

3 cope /kəʊp/ – *verb*

- The death of a beloved pet is hard to **cope** with.
- I read an interesting article on how to **cope** with difficult people.

___ *Cope with* means a. to value. b. to predict. c. to handle.

4 evaluate /ɪ'væljʊeɪt/ – *verb*

- I need to **evaluate** both job offers before I decide which to accept.
- Several long-distance phone companies make the same promises, so it is hard to **evaluate** which is best.

___ *Evaluate* means a. to ignore. b. to judge. c. to remember.

5 observe /əb'zɜːv/ – *verb*

- Medical students are allowed to **observe** surgeons at work.
- The children lay on the ground to **observe** some ants building an anthill.

___ *Observe* means a. to see. b. to think about. c. to control.

6 phrase /freɪz/ – *noun*

- The **phrase** "at this point in time" can be reduced to a single word: *now.*
- The **phrase** "Tom, Dick or Harry" means "any member of the general public."

___ *Phrase* means a. puzzle. b. word group. c. answer.

7 **practical**
/ˈpræktɪkəl/
– adjective

- Mom puts old socks to **practical** use as dust rags.
- The two single friends realized it would be **practical** to move in together and split the rent.

___*Practical* means a. done for practice. b. expensive. c. sensible.

8 **random**
/ˈrændəm/
– adjective

- We studied two paintings in art class. One was a clearly organized arrangement of black and white dots; the other seemed to be a **random** collection of spots and streaks of brilliant color.
- The movement of clouds may seem to be **random**, but scientists know that there is a pattern to how they move.

___*Random* means a. without order. b. rare. c. useful.

9 **significant**
/sɪgˈnɪfɪkənt/
– adjective

- My factory job was hard but worthwhile because I earned a **significant** part of my college expenses.
- Doctors have found that a good attitude can play a **significant** role in helping people recover from diseases.

___*Significant* means a. busy. b. large. c. easy.

10 **sole**
/səʊl/
– adjective

- After her husband died, the woman was the **sole** support of a large family.
- The **sole** reason my cousin ever calls me is to ask for money.

___*Sole* means a. only. b. friendly. c. early.

Matching Words with Definitions

Following are definitions of the ten words. **Print** each word next to its definition. If you look closely at each word in context, you will be able to figure out its meaning.

1. ____________ Quite large in amount or quantity; important in amount
2. ____________ Almost, but not exactly; more or less
3. ____________ Not having a plan, purpose, or pattern; chance
4. ____________ To decide on the value of (something)
5. ____________ To deal with difficulties; handle
6. ____________ Only; being the only one
7. ____________ Useful and sensible
8. ____________ To watch with attention
9. ____________ Steady; regular
10. ____________ A group of words with a meaning; an expression

CAUTION: Do not go any further until you are sure the above answers are correct. Then you can use the definitions to help you in the following practices. Your goal is eventually to know the words well enough so that you don't need to check the definitions at all.

➣ *Sentence Check 1*

Using the answer line, complete each item below with the correct word from the box.

a. **approximately**	b. **consistent**	c. **cope**	d. **evaluate**	e. **observe**
f. **phrase**	g. **practical**	h. **random**	i. **significant**	j. **sole**

1. Rhonda is a ___ student, bringing home B's regularly.
2. The Murphys have so many pets that they spend a ___ amount of their grocery money to feed them.
3. The course on "Smart Shopping" teaches people how to ___ the worth of products and services.
4. To learn to make lasagna, I ___d my mother making it.
5. I like to take ___ walks, without any plan in mind.
6. My friends helped me ___ with my father's death.
7. People just learning English are often puzzled by ___s such as "on the up-and-up" and "You don't say!"
8. I barely know my neighbor — the ___ conversation we ever have is saying "Good morning" to each other.
9. White furniture is not ___ for a family with little kids who wear dirty shoes and spill Kool-Aid.
10. "I'd like you to cut off this much," Eileen told her hairdresser, indicating° ___ two inches.

➣ *Sentence Check 2*

Using the answer lines, complete each item below with **two** words from the box.

1–2. Dave found an inexpensive, ___ way to ___ with his problem of mice in his house — he got a cat.

3–4. Pizza is Little Italy's best seller, bringing in ___ 30 percent of the profits, a very ___ part of the restaurant's income.

5–6. The best way to ___ a college and decide if it is right for you is to visit it and ___ classes and other activities there.

7–8. The ___ "a chance meeting" refers to a ___ meeting — in other words, one that happens accidentally.

9–10. The ___ exercise I get is walking — nothing else. But I am ___ about it — I do it every day. I prefer solitary° walks so that I don't have to talk to anyone.

Related Words

Once you learn a new word, you can more easily understand many related words. Below are ten words related to the core words of this chapter. Use their definitions to help you write in the word that best completes each item.

a. **evaluation**, *noun*	A judgment of the value or quality of something
b. **impractical**, *adjective*	Not sensible; not useful
c. **inconsistent**, *adjective*	Not steady; changing; not dependable
d. **observant**, *adjective*	Watchful; paying careful attention
e. **at random**, *adverb*	Without a plan or purpose

________________ 1. Waiting to see the dentist, Loni picked up a magazine ___, not even noticing its title.

________________ 2. We have an ___ supply of hot water — sometimes there is plenty; at other times, there's not enough for even one shower.

________________ 3. The restaurant closed down abruptly° after a bad ___ by the health department.

________________ 4. If you were more ___, you would have noticed that we have been driving in a circle for a considerable° amount of time.

________________ 5. I rarely buy clothing in ___ fabrics that I can't stick in the washing machine or that require ironing. I don't want to complicate° my housework any more than necessary.

f. **insignificant**, *adjective*	Small in size or amount
g. **observation**, *noun*	The careful watching of someone or something
h. **observatory**, *noun*	A building that houses telescopes for the study of the stars
i. **rephrase**, *verb*	To say again, but in a different way
j. **significance**, *noun*	Importance

________________ 6. The detectives' ___ of the house led them to believe that there was an illegal gambling operation going on inside.

________________ 7. Last Saturday, science students went on a field trip to an ___, where they were able to look at the planets and even watch a meteor shower.

________________ 8. Santiago asked Abby, "Will you marry me?" Then, before she could answer, he said, "Let me ___ that — will you marry me in two years when I get my degree?"

________________ 9. The invention of the printing press was of great ___ because it made books available to people who could not afford hand-copied ones.

________________ 10. I was astonished° to see a woman at the supermarket drop a quarter and not pick it up. She must have thought it was an ___ amount of money.

➣ *Synonyms and Antonyms*

A. Synonyms. Write the letter of the word or phrase that most nearly means the **same** as each boldfaced word.

_____ 1. **cope**

a. compete with b. manage
c. quarrel d. agree

_____ 2. **evaluate**

a. judge b. pay for
c. see d. borrow

_____ 3. **observe**

a. set a goal b. perform
c. watch d. handle

_____ 4. **phrase**

a. a practice b. something useful
c. a plan d. a group of words

_____ 5. **sole**

a. important b. only
c. sensible d. unplanned

B. Antonyms. Write the letter of the word or phrase that most nearly means the **opposite** of each boldfaced word.

_____ 6. **approximately**

a. well-known b. exactly
c. not clear d. often

_____ 7. **consistent**

a. having a plan b. not close
c. valuable d. not regular

_____ 8. **practical**

a. useless b. valuable
c. attractive d. common

_____ 9. **random**

a. not steady b. interesting
c. unknown d. planned

_____ 10. **significant**

a. wrong b. unclear
c. dull d. small in amount

Final Check

Read the passages carefully. Then fill in each blank with the word that best fits the context.

A. Practicing Kindness

a. **consistent**	b. **evaluate**	c. **observe**
d. **phrase**	e. **random**	

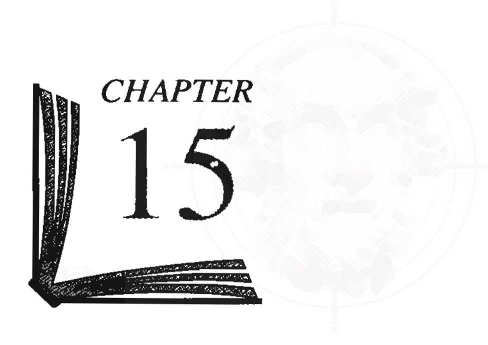
Maybe you've heard the (1)__________________ or seen it printed on a bumper sticker. It encourages people to do kind things for no particular reason, with no particular plan. It goes like this: "Practice (2)__________________ acts of kindness and senseless beauty." I don't know where it originated° or who said it first. But I have seen people putting the idea into practice. I've (3)__________________d people putting quarters into parking meters so that a stranger's car wouldn't be ticketed. I've heard of someone paying a family's bill in a restaurant, then leaving before the family found out. I know a man who is (4)________________ in not letting a day go by without giving someone a sincere compliment.

Why do these people bother? They probably don't stop to (5)____________________ their actions or objectives°. But if they did, I assume° they would say something like this: Kindness can be catching, just as cruelty can be. When we do something unexpected and nice for another person, who knows where that act of kindness might end?

B. The Stinking Rose

f. **approximately**	g. **cope**	h. **practical**
i. **significant**	j. **sole**	

Centuries ago in Rome, it was called "stinking rose." It was then used to flavor food and for such (6)____________________ purposes as fighting colds. Today we call it garlic, and we too find this wonderful substance° delicious and useful. In fact, in one recent year, Americans bought enough garlic to provide every man, woman, and child with (7)____________________ one and a half pounds of the stuff. It is added to a wide variety° of foods, from appetizers to zucchini — even to chocolate peanut butter cups. The unfortunate thing about garlic is that it produces bad breath. One way to (8)____________________ with garlic breath is to chew parsley, an excellent natural breath cleaner. Or eat garlic only with others who are also eating it. Being tasty is not the (9)____________________ good thing about garlic — it turns out that the ancient Romans were absolutely right about its having health benefits. A (10)______________________ number of studies (about 3,000) have been done of the onionlike plant. They suggest that garlic may strengthen the immune system, fight colds, cause a reduction° in blood pressure, and even help prevent cancer.





authentic	**eligible**
characteristic	**harsh**
concept	**remote**
confront	**shallow**
disrupt	**thrive**

Ten Words in Context

In the space provided, write the letter of the meaning closest to that of each **boldfaced** word. Use the context of the sentences to help you figure out each word's meaning.

1 authentic
/ɔːˈθentɪk/
– adjective

- Don't be fooled if someone tries to sell you an **authentic** diamond ring for $10.99. The stone in that ring is sure to be fake.
- Several people claim to have saved the little girl from the burning building, so no one knows who is the **authentic** hero.

___ *Authentic* means a. old. b. qualified. c. real.

2 characteristic
/ˌkærəktəˈrɪstɪk/
– adjective

- Leon has his family's **characteristic** warm smile.
- Olive oil, garlic, pasta and cheese are **characteristic** parts of the Italian diet.

___ *Characteristic* means a. usual. b. convenient. c. strange.

3 concept
/ˈkɒnsept/
– noun

- When asked for her **concept** of heaven, the child said, "A room full of toys and chocolate."
- My sister doesn't understand the **concept** of living within a budget.

___ *Concept* means a. idea. b. worst fear. c. memory.

4 confront
/kənˈfrʌnt/
– verb

- The restaurant manager really should **confront** that waiter and complain about his rude behavior.
- The opposing lawyer plans to **confront** the accused man with a surprise piece of evidence.

___ *Confront* means a. to avoid. b. to face. c. to prepare.

5 disrupt
/dɪsˈrʌpt/
– verb

- "One way to **disrupt** a biology class," my roommate said, "is to turn the frogs loose and let them hop all over the floor."
- Parents who are angry about budget cuts plan to **disrupt** tonight's school board meeting with a noisy demonstration.

___ *Disrupt* means a. to manage. b. to go to. c. to upset.

6 eligible
/ˈelɪdʒəbl/
– adjective

- Because of his high grades and his parents' low income, my cousin is **eligible** for some good college scholarships.
- It's not true that any American can become president of the United States. To be **eligible**, you have to be at least thirty-five years old.

___ *Eligible* means a. qualified. b. known. c. pleased.

7 **harsh**
/hɑːʃ/
– *adjective*

- The **harsh** ruler decided to punish the entire village for one man's crime.
- The scolding the children received was too **harsh** — they hadn't done anything all that bad.

___ *Harsh* means a. fair. b. rough. c. wasteful.

8 **remote**
/rɪˈməʊt/
– *adjective*

- Humans have explored even the most **remote** parts of the planet, areas deep in forests and beneath the seas.
- Some parts of the park are so **remote** that visitors seldom reach them.

___ *Remote* means a. large. b. typical. c. distant.

9 **shallow**
/ˈʃæləʊ/
– *adjective*

- The lifeguard at the pool insists that young children stay at the **shallow** end.
- The cake won't rise very high in that **shallow** pan; you'll need a pan with higher sides.

___ *Shallow* means a. real. b. not deep. c. very wide.

10 **thrive**
/θraɪv/
– *verb*

- The African violets should **thrive** in that sunny window.
- In the past, many premature babies died, but with modern medical care most of them **thrive** and live normal lives.

___ *Thrive* means a. to do very well. b. to grow weaker. c. to need too much care.

Matching Words with Definitions

Following are definitions of the ten words. **Print** each word next to its definition. If you look closely at each word in context, you will be able to figure out its meaning.

1. ______________ Not deep
2. ______________ To face or oppose boldly
3. ______________ To grow very well; improve physically
4. ______________ To cause disorder or confusion; upset
5. ______________ Qualified to be chosen; desirable as a candidate
6. ______________ Unkind or cruel; strict; severe
7. ______________ Far away; out-of-the-way; hidden away
8. ______________ Typical of someone or something
9. ______________ A general thought; an idea
10. ______________ Real; true; actual

CAUTION: Do not go any further until you are sure the above answers are correct. Then you can use the definitions to help you in the following practices. Your goal is eventually to know the words well enough so that you don't need to check the definitions at all.

➣ *Sentence Check 1*

Using the answer line, complete each item below with the correct word from the box.

a. **authentic**	b. **characteristic**	c. **concept**	d. **confront**	e. **disrupt**
f. **eligible**	g. **harsh**	h. **remote**	i. **shallow**	j. **thrive**

________________ 1. The creek was so ___ that the water came up only to my ankles.

________________ 2. Some imitation pearl necklaces are so beautiful that only a jeweler can tell the pearls are not ___.

________________ 3. Cindy received ___ treatment from her cruel stepmother.

________________ 4. The preschool teacher tries to help her little students understand the ___ of sharing.

________________ 5. The student assembly was ___ed by a fire drill.

________________ 6. The weak, sickly child began to ___ after doctors corrected her heart problem.

________________ 7. Professor Lopez studies little-known plants in ___ parts of our state forests.

________________ 8. After a man dropped a bag of trash on the ground, another man picked it up and ___ed him, saying, "I think this is yours. Find a trash can."

________________ 9. Students must have at least a B average to be ___ for any of the school sports teams.

________________ 10. Fat, fleshy leaves are ___ of cactus plants.

➣ *Sentence Check 2*

Using the answer lines, complete each item below with **two** words from the box.

____
________________ 1–2. The two rings looked alike to me, but the jeweler said that only one had the colorful sparkle that is ___ of an ___ diamond.

____
________________ 3–4. Tomorrow I will ___ our neighbors and protest° about the way that their unleashed dog ___s the children's backyard games.

____
________________ 5–6. A child who does poorly in school with a ___, bad-tempered teacher might ___ with a teacher who is gentle and caring.

____
________________ 7–8. Because she is a biologist, Mia is ___ to be part of a research team that will study turtles on a ___ island.

____
________________ 9–10. Because babies can drown in very little water, the ___ that they are safe in a ___ pool is false — a reliable° adult must be watching them every second.

Related Words

Once you learn a new word, you can more easily understand many related words. Below are ten words related to the core words of this chapter. Use their definitions to help you write in the word that best completes each item.

a. **character**, *noun*	The moral qualities of a person
b. **confrontation**, *noun*	An angry or threatening meeting
c. **disruptive**, *adjective*	Causing confusion or disturbance
d. **inauthentic**, *adjective*	Not real; fake
e. **ineligible**, *adjective*	Not qualified for a particular purpose

________ 1. The museum directors were shocked to learn that their most famous painting was ___; it was only a very well-done copy.

________ 2. Jerry wouldn't cheat on a test — his ___ is very good.

________ 3. It can be dangerous to try to break up a ___ between a couple of angry dogs.

________ 4. One ___ child can take up more of a teacher's attention than a whole class of well-behaved children.

________ 5. People who are related to any of the judges are ___ to enter the talent contest.

f. **conceive**, *verb*	To have an idea or opinion
g. **disruption**, *noun*	A disturbance or interruption
h. **eligibility**, *noun*	Qualifications; fitness
i. **harshly**, *adverb*	In a cruel or strict manner
j. **harshness**, *noun*	Strictness; cruelty

________ 6. There was an interesting ___ in English class today — someone opened a window, and a sparrow flew in.

________ 7. Sports are supposed to be wholesome° activities, so it was especially sad when two athletes lost their ___ to compete in the Olympics because they failed drug tests.

________ 8. "Everyone down on the floor. You too, lady," the bank robber said ___ to the elderly woman.

________ 9. Children ___ of their parents as very wise and powerful. However, when they become teenagers, they revise° that view quite a bit.

________ 10. Benita loves playing the piano, but she quit taking piano lessons because of the ___ of her teacher's methods. He once made her play the same few notes approximately° twenty-five times in a row.

➣ *Analogies*

Each item below starts with a pair of words in CAPITAL LETTERS. For each item, figure out the relationship between these two words. Then decide which of the choices (*a*, *b*, *c*, or *d*) expresses a similar relationship. Write the letter of your choice on the answer line. (All the repeated words in these items are from this unit.)

____ 1. AUTHENTIC : REAL ::

a. lost : found
b. expensive : high-priced
c. expected : surprising
d. inner : external

____ 2. EXTERNAL° : INTERNAL° ::

a. outside : weather
b. sole° : only
c. intense° : weak
d. red : bright

____ 3. HARSH : KIND ::

a. late : tardy
b. helpful : useful
c. permanent : temporary°
d. incredible° : amazing

____ 4. ORANGE : FRUIT ::

a. cat : dog
b. triumph°: loss
c. penicillin : remedy°
d. strawberry : cherry

____ 5. CONFRONT : AVOID ::

a. strive° : try
b. eligible : qualified
c. tear : rip
d. prosper° : fail

____ 6. SHALLOW : DEEP ::

a. brief: short
b. disrupt : upset
c. laughing : frowning
d. random° : unplanned

____ 7. WINDOW : TRANSPARENT° ::

a. door : doorknob
b. window : curtain
c. car : highway
d. grass : green

____ 8. THRIVE : WEAKEN ::

a. protest° : approve
b. smile : grin
c. protect : guard
d. observe° : watch

____ 9. TRAIT° : PATIENCE ::

a. promise : withdraw°
b. substance° : clay
c. banker : money
d. kindness : intelligence

____ 10. GIVE : GIFT ::

a. run : walk
b. detect° : clue
c. concept : idea
d. exhaust° : tire

➣ *Final Check*

Read the passages carefully. Then fill in each blank with the word that best fits the context.

A. A Modern Fairy Tale

a. **concept**	b. **confront**	c. **disrupt**
d. **eligible**	e. **harsh**	

Many fairy tales are versions° of the same story: A prince has his pick of all the (1)____________ women in the kingdom. But the girl he likes best is in big trouble, so the prince bravely rescues her. The girl doesn't do much of anything. She just looks pretty. The stories all end with more or less the same phrase°: "They lived happily ever after."

But one fairy tale, "The Paper Bag Princess," gets rid of the (2)____________ of the brave prince and the helpless girl. In it, Princess Elizabeth is engaged to Prince Ronald. But a dragon (3)____________s their plans by burning the castle and capturing Ronald. Elizabeth decides to rescue him. Since all her pretty clothes have been burned up, she puts on a paper bag. She bravely (4)____________s the dragon and tricks him into using up all his strength on silly tasks. Then she goes into the dragon's cave and finds Ronald.

Instead of being grateful, however, Ronald gives Elizabeth a (5)____________ scolding for being covered with dirt and smoke and for wearing a bag. He tells her to come back when she looks like "a real princess." Elizabeth tells Ronald that though he looks like a real prince, with his fancy clothes and neat hair, he is, in fact, "a bum." The last picture in the book shows Elizabeth dancing happily off into the sunset, with the final line "They didn't get married after all."

B. Wolf Children

f. **authentic**	g. **characteristic**	h. **remote**
i. **shallow**	j. **thrive**	

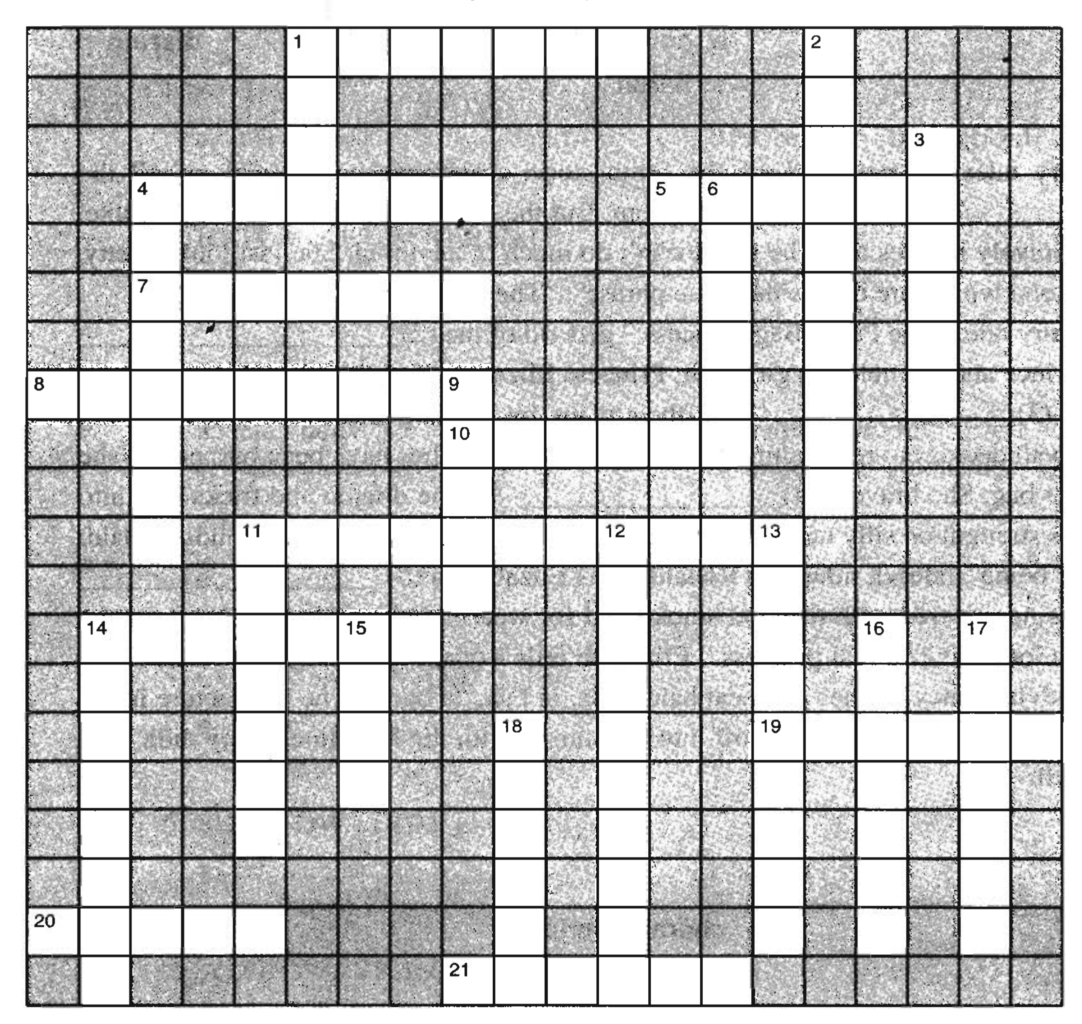
A tale of children being raised by wolves sounds incredible°. However, though hard to believe, one story about wolf children appears to be (6)____________. In Singapore during the early 1920s, Reverend J. A. L. Singh heard stories of "man-beasts" that were frightening the people of a (7)____________ jungle village. Along with a group of other men, Singh went in search of that hidden village and the strange creatures.

When Singh uncovered a (8)____________ hole, he discovered a family of wolves. From within the wolves' den, two pale creatures peeked out. Singh's party killed the adult wolves and dug into the den. There they found two human children curled up with the cubs. The children were captured and brought to the village in bamboo cages.

The children never spoke to other humans; instead, they howled and growled like animals. Their diet was equally wolf-like: they preferred raw meat, mice, and cockroaches. And they had the wolf's (9)____________ desire to be active at night, as well as a dislike of the indoors. Sadly, the children did not (10)____________. Both grew weak and died.

UNIT THREE: Review

The box at the right lists twenty-five words from Unit Three. Using the clues at the bottom of the page, fill in these words to complete the puzzle that follows.



artificial
complicate
concept
cope
counsel
detect
exhaust
external
foresight
harsh
intense
internal
phrase
protest
random
remedy
remote
shallow
significant
sole
strive
thrive
tolerance
trait
triumph

ACROSS

1. To give advice or guidance to
4. Extreme in strength or degree; very strong
5. To try hard
7. An outstanding or very satisfying success; victory
8. Care in planning or preparing for the future
10. Far away; out-of-the-way
11. Quite large in amount or quantity
14. To tire greatly
19. Not having a plan, purpose, or pattern; chance
20. Unkind or cruel; strict; severe
21. A cure; something that heals

DOWN

1. To deal with difficulties
2. Made to imitate something natural
3. To notice; discover that something exists or is present
4. Inner; located inside
6. To grow very well; improve physically
9. A quality or feature, as of personality, for which a person is known
11. Not deep
12. To make difficult by adding or involving many parts or details; make complex
13. Respect for the differing views, practices, and characteristics of others
14. Outer; located outside
15. Only; being the only one
16. A general thought; an idea
17. To complain
18. A group of words with a meaning; an expression

UNIT THREE: Test 1

PART A

Choose the word that best completes each item and write it in the space provided.

______________ 1. Since my math class was very difficult for me, I consider the B I got for the course to be a great ___.

a. foresight b. triumph c. tolerance d. trait

______________ 2. When I began exercising I was in such bad shape that walking a mile ___ me, but now I run three miles every day.

a. observed b. prospered c. exhausted d. protested

______________ 3. It's hard to believe in a doctor who ___ his patients not to smoke, but who smokes himself.

a. counsels b. copes with c. withdraws d. exhausts

______________ 4. The ___ of Luis's ear infections when he was a little boy was great, but he hasn't had one for years now.

a. phrase b. objective c. frequency d. conscience

______________ 5. "Remember that you ___ all of the people of our city," one man yelled to the mayor, "not just the rich ones."

a. represent b. detect c. protest d. thrive

______________ 6. It turned out that my son's interest in collecting stamps was only ___. He forgot about it after a couple of months.

a. temporary b. intense c. external d. transparent

______________ 7. If I ___ a hair in my food, then I can't eat another bite of that food, even after I remove the hair.

a. strive b. evaluate c. assume d. detect

______________ 8. As much as I would love to call in sick to work and go the baseball game, my ___ won't let me.

a. substance b. conscience c. phrase d. interval

______________ 9. Just because Donald is quiet in class, don't ___ that he is stupid.

a. assume b. protest c. disrupt d. withdraw

______________ 10. As she read in the living room, Anna became ___ of loud voices coming from her parents' room.

a. appropriate b. shallow c. authentic d. conscious

______________ 11. My daughter invited some friends over for dinner and then ___ my planning by telling me that one is allergic to eggs, another is allergic to milk, and the third is a vegetarian.

a. prospered b. complicated c. thrived d. detected

(Continues on next page)

________ 12. When they visited the coast, the Martins enjoyed a trip in a glass-bottomed boat. They looked through its ___ bottom and saw many fish and other sea creatures.

a. transparent b. random c. remote d. harsh

________ 13. The hardware store sells ___ stones made of plastic that you can open and hide a house key in. Then you can hide the key by leaving the "stone" somewhere near your door.

a. eligible b. authentic c. artificial d. objective

PART B

Write **C** if the italicized word is used **correctly**. Write **I** if the word is used **incorrectly**.

____ 14. After using the *external* part of onions and potatoes in a meal, I use the peels to make broth.

____ 15. As *incredible* as it seems, the Nile River in Africa has frozen over at least twice.

____ 16. The house's *internal* appearance is neat, but inside, it's a real mess.

____ 17. Drivers in our state must not exceed a *maximum* of sixty miles an hour.

____ 18. My only *objective* to Mimi is that spending time with her is more boring than watching paint dry.

____ 19. The play was so bad that we slipped out of the theater during the *interval* between the first and second acts.

____ 20. Joan's sickness seemed to be getting better, but over the weekend she had a *remedy* and is now seriously ill.

____ 21. The lovely bushes and flowering trees certainly *detract* from the beauty of the neighborhood.

____ 22. Knowing that his children often bring home friends after a baseball game, Mr. Hendricks had the *foresight* to make extra hamburgers for dinner.

____ 23. The chickens *protest* loudly whenever someone takes their eggs out from under them.

____ 24. Many people don't eat much breakfast because their hunger in the morning is *intense*.

____ 25. Our boss is so *harsh* that he gives every employee an extra day off on his or her birthday.

Score (Number correct) ________ × 4 = ________%

Enter your score above and in the vocabulary performance chart on the inside back cover of the book.

UNIT THREE: Test 2

PART A

Complete each item with a word from the box. Use each word once.

a. **approximately**	b. **authentic**	c. **consistent**	d. **cope**	e. **disrupt**
f. **eligible**	g. **phrase**	h. **prosper**	i. **remote**	j. **shallow**
k. **substance**	l. **trait**	m. **withdraw**		

________ 1. A swarm of bees ___ed the picnic, sending people running and yelling in every direction.

________ 2. One way to ___ with winter weather is to stay indoors, turn the heat up, play old Beach Boys records, and watch videotapes of Hawaiian hula dancers.

________ 3. When asked what ___ is most important in a boyfriend or girlfriend, many people answer, "A sense of humor."

________ 4. In order to have the peace and quiet he needed to finish his book, the writer moved to a ___ cabin where there were no people, no cars, and not even a telephone.

________ 5. A lemonade stand would ___ on this corner — hundreds of hot, thirsty people walk by every day.

________ 6. The librarian complained that someone had returned a book with a sticky ___ all over its cover.

________ 7. If someone tells you he can sell you an ___ diamond bracelet for twenty dollars, don't believe him.

________ 8. Do you have to be a high-school graduate to be ___ to join the Army?

________ 9. The car sells for ___ fifteen thousand dollars; the exact price depends on what "extras" you order, such as power windows or a CD player.

________ 10. I don't think I'd like to live in a place where the weather is so ___ that there is never any change from day to day.

________ 11. Don't bury those carrot seeds too deep — just dig a ___ hole for each one and cover it with a small amount of soil.

________ 12. I had to ___ my offer to buy my friend's old car when I realized I couldn't afford automobile insurance.

________ 13. My grandfather usually spoke English, but he always greeted friends with the Spanish __ "Qué pasa?" which means "What's happening?"

(Continues on next page)

PART B

Write **C** if the italicized word is used **correctly**. Write **I** if the word is used **incorrectly**.

_____ 14. Manuel is a hard-working person who always *strives* to do his best.

_____ 15. Amanda was the *sole* person at the table who ate meat. Everyone else was a vegetarian.

_____ 16. After being put in the sun and watered regularly, the once-sickly plant soon *thrived.*

_____ 17. When I asked the traffic cop directions to the post office, he *evaluated* that it was just down the block.

_____ 18. Seeing her best friend get off the train, Irene *observed* quickly down the sidewalk to give her a hug.

_____ 19. My blood pressure is so high that I have scheduled a *random* appointment with my doctor.

_____ 20. The little girl taught herself the *concept* of "right" and "left" by remembering, "**I write** with my **right** hand."

_____ 21. The families decided it would be too *practical* to eat in an expensive restaurant.

_____ 22. I keep a couple of quarters in my pocket for *significant* purchases, such as a pack of gum.

_____ 23. The letters "ski" are a *characteristic* part of many Polish names, such as Kwilinski and Paderewski.

_____ 24. Because Linda is so shy, she usually *confronts* people rather than daring to face them and actually talk to them.

_____ 25. It's plain to see from the way Diane quarrels so often with her friends that she has lots of *tolerance* for other people's opinions.

Score (Number correct) ________ × 4 = ________%

Enter your score above and in the vocabulary performance chart on the inside back cover of the book.

UNIT THREE: Test 3

PART A: Synonyms

In the space provided, write the letter of the choice that is most nearly the **same** in meaning as the **boldfaced** word.

_____ 1. **assume** a) improve b) tire c) manage d) take for granted

_____ 2. **characteristic** a) typical b) strong c) important d) amazing

_____ 3. **concept** a) idea b) goal c) period d) knowledge of right and wrong

_____ 4. **confront** a) interrupt b) take away from c) face boldly d) succeed

_____ 5. **conscience** a) respect for others b) sense of right and wrong c) feature d) how often something happens

_____ 6. **cope with** a) judge b) remove c) believe d) manage

_____ 7. **counsel** a) give advice to b) bring together c) send away d) search for

_____ 8. **detect** a) take from b) speak for c) stop briefly d) discover

_____ 9. **disrupt** a) upset b) watch c) tire d) complain

_____10. **eligible** a) important b) chosen c) qualified d) amazing

_____11. **evaluate** a) judge b) try c) grow d) take back

_____12. **foresight** a) purpose b) care in planning c) cure d) attention

_____13. **frequency** a) material b) goal c) word group d) how often something happens

_____14. **interval** a) time in between b) thought c) system d) word group

_____15. **objective** a) goal b) respect c) cure d) matter

_____16. **observe** a) decide b) succeed c) give advice d) watch

_____17. **phrase** a) period of time b) shape c) word group d) amount

_____18. **remote** a) not usual b) out-of-the-way c) believable d) able to be seen through

_____19. **represent** a) speak for b) feel anger against c) make smaller d) send again

_____20. **sole** a) outer b) best c) large d) only

_____21. **substance** a) care b) general thought c) material d) knowledge

_____22. **tolerance** a) win b) possibility c) confusion d) lack of prejudice

_____23. **trait** a) meeting b) story c) plan d) feature

_____24. **transparent** a) fake b) amazing c) proud d) able to be seen through

_____25. **withdraw** a) write down b) take back c) shorten d) watch

(Continues on next page)

PART B: Antonyms

In the space provided, write the letter of the choice that is most nearly **opposite** in meaning to the **boldfaced** word.

____26. **approximately** a) always b) useful c) exactly d) properly

____27. **artificial** a) perfect b) likeable c) suitable d) natural

____28. **authentic** a) demanding b) believable c) sharp d) fake

____29. **complicate** a) make easy b) speed up c) pass over d) take advice

____30. **conscious** a) unqualified b) unusual c) unexpected d) unaware

____31. **consistent** a) gentle b) changing c) rude d) weak

____32. **detract** a) stay the same b) add to c) fail d) rest

____33. **exhaust** a) give energy to b) explain c) expect d) get worse

____34. **external** a) useless b) harmful c) inner d) close

____35. **harsh** a) planned b) nearby c) useful d) kindly

____36. **incredible** a) regular b) not possible c) easy to believe d) disagreeable

____37. **intense** a) accidental b) weak c) long-lasting d) helpless

____38. **internal** a) real b) deep c) honest d) outer

____39. **maximum** a) least possible b) legal c) exact d) able

____40. **practical** a) not sensible b) not inside c) not easy d) not possible

____41. **prosper** a) make easy b) face c) fail d) help

____42. **protest** a) put an end to b) approve c) give d) grow stronger

____43. **random** a) believable b) not wanted c) planned d) pleasant

____44. **remedy** a) thought b) distance c) purpose d) disease

____45. **shallow** a) deep b) crowded c) weak d) least

____46. **significant** a) not real b) done on purpose c) not important d) not steady

____47. **strive** a) give advice b) put in c) ask for d) give up

____48. **temporary** a) long-lasting b) not qualified c) weak d) not typical

____49. **thrive** a) know b) argue c) change d) grow weak

____50. **triumph** a) suggestion b) patience c) distance d) loss

Score (Number correct) ________ × 2 = ________%

Enter your score above and in the vocabulary performance chart on the inside back cover of the book.

Unit Four

Chapter 16

apparent	fulfill
automatic	influence
burden	security
economical	sympathize
extravagant	transfer

Chapter 17

appropriate	emotion
bewilder	fiction
communicate	investigate
deceive	legible
earnest	theory

Chapter 18

assure	humiliate
crucial	impulse
distract	perceive
extraordinary	revive
hostile	timid

Chapter 19

abandon	function
alert	idle
circumstances	overcome
devote	primary
dominate	theme

Chapter 20

disregard	monotonous
excerpt	obtain
exclude	prey
hinder	seize
misleading	severe

Unit Four: *Pretest*

In the space provided, write the letter of the choice that is closest in meaning to the **boldfaced** word.

____ 1. **apparent** a) impossible to see with the naked eye b) made up of many small parts c) obvious d) hard to understand

____ 2. **automatic** a) easily moved b) operating by itself c) unable to change d) improving over time

____ 3. **burden** a) hardship b) joy c) reply d) payment

____ 4. **economical** a) wasteful b) intelligent c) thrifty d) forgiving

____ 5. **extravagant** a) critical b) wasteful c) wise d) messy

____ 6. **fulfill** a) carry out b) fail at a task c) understand another's feelings d) give advice

____ 7. **influence** a) misunderstand b) excuse c) be offended d) persuade

____ 8. **security** a) protection b) loneliness c) immaturity d) ridicule

____ 9. **sympathize** a) share feeling b) object c) refuse d) cooperate

____ 10. **transfer** a) find fault b) discontinue c) send from a place d) inspect

____ 11. **appropriate** a) rude b) impulsive c) unwise d) proper

____ 12. **bewilder** a) calm b) confuse c) accept d) explain

____ 13. **communicate** a) anger b) inform c) hurry d) mistake

____ 14. **deceive** a) mislead b) encourage c) prevent d) forbid

____ 15. **earnest** a) dishonest b) wealthy c) pleasant d) sincere

____ 16. **emotion** a) feeling b) eyesight c) movement d) payment

____ 17. **fiction** a) made up b) exciting c) violent d) romantic

____ 18. **investigate** a) abandon b) make secure c) examine d) insist

____ 19. **legible** a) heavy b) clear c) empty d) noisy

____ 20. **theory** a) opportunity b) guess c) certainty d) excuse

____ 21. **assure** a) argue with b) remind c) agree with d) promise

____ 22. **crucial** a) useless b) ugly c) important d) famous

____ 23. **distract** a) make sad b) support c) cause to disappear d) cause to turn away

____ 24. **extraordinary** a) left over b) unusual c) normal d) very simple

____ 25. **hostile** a) unfriendly b) frightened c) important d) growing

(Continues on next page)

____ 26. **humiliate** a) misunderstand b) embarrass c) defeat d) excite

____ 27. **impulse** a) sudden desire b) lack of movement c) difficulty d) heartbeat

____ 28. **perceive** a) strain b) notice c) lie to d) prepare

____ 29. **revive** a) leave alone b) say again c) bring back to life d) embarrass

____ 30. **timid** a) athletic b) full of energy c) careless d) shy

____ 31. **abandon** a) stop doing b) hold onto c) bring together d) begin

____ 32. **alert** a) bad-smelling b) lazy c) strong d) fully awake

____ 33. **circumstances** a) feelings b) facts c) circles d) desires

____ 34. **devote** a) take away b) look over c) give oneself d) show a preference

____ 35. **dominate** a) be a part of b) be a leader in c) drop out of d) lose interest in

____ 36. **function** a) purpose b) topic c) fact d) part

____ 37. **idle** a) frightened b) full of energy c) lonely d) not active

____ 38. **overcome** a) be a winner over b) leave behind c) see clearly d) lose to

____ 39. **primary** a) easy b) unimportant c) entertaining d) main

____ 40. **theme** a) main idea b) difficulty c) direction d) river

____ 41. **disregard** a) look at b) get in the way of c) admire d) ignore

____ 42. **excerpt** a) part b) prize c) sudden decision d) trip

____ 43. **exclude** a) invite b) bring into c) keep out d) tire out

____ 44. **hinder** a) find out b) interfere with c) bring into d) put behind

____ 45. **misleading** a) serious b) straight c) giving the wrong idea d) staying close to

____ 46. **monotonous** a) loud b) dull c) pleasant d) messy

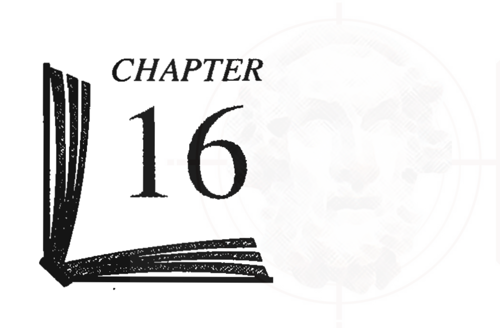
____ 47. **obtain** a) get b) protect c) spoil d) move

____ 48. **prey** a) victim b) leader c) struggle d) prayer

____ 49. **seize** a) tell b) stare c) strain d) grab

____ 50. **severe** a) boring b) new c) serious d) exciting

SCORE: (Number correct) ________ × 2 = __________ %





apparent	**fulfill**
automatic	**influence**
burden	**security**
economical	**sympathize**
extravagant	**transfer**

Ten Words in Context

In the space provided, write the letter of the meaning closest to that of each **boldfaced** word. Use the context of the sentences to help you figure out each word's meaning.

1 apparent
/ə'pærənt/
– *adjective*

- Marcie's smile made it **apparent** that she had done well on the test.
- It's **apparent** that Leon and Bess have settled their quarrel, since they are dating steadily again.

___ *Apparent* means a. helpful. b. clear. c. secret.

2 automatic
/ˌɔːtə'mætɪk/
– *adjective*

- Our new coffeemaker is **automatic**. We set it at night, and it turns on by itself in the morning.
- Before the **automatic** washing machine, laundering clothes was not so easy.

___ *Automatic* means a. self-operating. b. unusual. c. low in cost.

3 burden
/'bɜːdən/
– *noun*

- Although others think raising a handicapped child must be a **burden**, my neighbor says she has found joy, not hardship, in caring for her son.
- At first Louie was proud that he had stolen the money, but in time, his crime became a great **burden** to him.

___ *Burden* means a. freedom. b. protection. c. heavy load.

4 economical
/ˌiːkə'nɒmɪkəl/
– *adjective*

- It's usually more **economical** to buy food and soap in large packages. Smaller packages will cost more per ounce.
- To decide which car is most **economical**, compare prices, gas mileage, and repair costs.

___ *Economical* means a. difficult. b. money-saving. c. easy to see.

5 extravagant
/ɪk'strævəgənt/
– *adjective*

- I think it's **extravagant** to buy a prom dress that will be worn only once, so I borrowed one from a friend.
- Rhoda's budget is so tight that she felt it would be **extravagant** to buy herself a ten-dollar pair of earrings.

___ *Extravagant* means a. not effective. b. obvious. c. spending too much.

6 fulfill
/fʊl'fɪl/
– *verb*

- One day, Chen hopes to **fulfill** his dream of visiting China again and renewing ties with his family there.
- Jill doesn't like her job, but she promised to stay with it at least one year, and she plans to **fulfill** that promise.

___ *Fulfill* means a. repeat. b. carry out. c. have an effect on.

7 **influence** /ˈɪnfluəns/ – *verb*

- My father thinks my friends **influence** me too much. He says they are the reason that I study so little and party so often.
- Do advertisements **influence** what you buy?

___ *Influence* means a. delay. b. protect. c. affect.

8 **security** /sɪˈkjuərətɪ/ – *noun*

- For nighttime **security**, the owner of the jewelry shop turns on a burglar alarm.
- People with homes near the river like the **security** of flood insurance.

___ *Security* means a. hardship. b. expense. c. safety.

9 **sympathize** /ˈsɪmpəθaɪz/ – *verb*

- The whole town **sympathized** with the family whose house burned down.
- To show he **sympathized** with Mrs. Jackson when her husband died, Scott sent her flowers and a card.

___ *Sympathized with* means a. felt sorry for. b. sent for. c. talked to.

10 **transfer** /trænsˈfɜː(r)/ – *verb*

- Before I can paint the bookcase, I have to **transfer** all the books into boxes.
- In April, the Army will **transfer** Jamal from a base in South Carolina to one in Virginia.

___ *Transfer* means a. reach. b. move. c. see.

Matching Words with Definitions

Following are definitions of the ten words. **Print** each word next to its definition. If you look closely at each word in context, you will be able to figure out its meaning.

1. ______________________ Costing or spending little; thrifty
2. ______________________ To move or send from one place to another
3. ______________________ Moving or operating by itself
4. ______________________ To have an effect on
5. ______________________ To feel or express sorrow or pity for
6. ______________________ To carry out; achieve; do
7. ______________________ A hardship; something difficult to bear
8. ______________________ Obvious; easy to see
9. ______________________ Protection; freedom from danger, fear, or worry
10. ______________________ Spending much more than is necessary or wise; wasteful

CAUTION: Do not go any further until you are sure the above answers are correct. Then you can use the definitions to help you in the following practices. Your goal is eventually to know the words well enough so that you don't need to check the definitions at all.

➣ *Sentence Check 1*

Using the answer line, complete each item below with the correct word from the box.

a. **apparent**	b. **automatic**	c. **burden**	d. **economical**	e. **extravagant**
f. **fulfill**	g. **influence**	h. **security**	i. **sympathize**	j. **transfer**

__________ 1. My boss intends to assign me to another office. In other words, he wants to ___ me there.

__________ 2. A ___ may be a physical or a mental hardship, or both.

__________ 3. Political candidates try to ___ elections with numerous ads.

__________ 4. An ___ person enjoys spending a lot of money.

__________ 5. When we've had the same difficult experience as someone else, it's easier for us to ___ with him or her.

__________ 6. Because Kira was smiling, it was ___ that she was happy about something.

__________ 7. When you make an agreement with people, they expect you to ___ your part of the deal.

__________ 8. After people are robbed, they often feel a greater need for ___.

__________ 9. An ___ person doesn't like to waste money.

__________ 10. Do you think there will ever be a fully ___ car, one that needs no driver?

➣ *Sentence Check 2*

Using the answer lines, complete each item below with **two** words from the box.

____
__________ 1–2. Because we are moving, our children will have to ___ to different schools. I can ___ with them because I went through the same experience as a child.

____
__________ 3–4. ___ yard lights, which go on by themselves at dark, can add to the ___ of a home.

____
__________ 5–6. Clark had to think of an ___ way to ___ his promise to give each of his twelve nieces and nephews a gift, so he baked them each a pie.

____
__________ 7–8. From the young hiker's slowed walk, it was ___ that his large backpack had become a ___.

____
__________ 9–10. Having a credit card has ___d Barry in a sad way. He has become so ___ that he now has a closet full of more clothes than he can wear — and a huge credit-card bill.

➣ *Related Words*

Once you learn a new word, you can more easily understand many related words. Below are ten words related to the core words of this chapter. Use their definitions to help you write in the word that best completes each item.

a. **automation,** *noun*	The use of machines instead of people or animals
b. **economize,** *verb*	To cut down on spending
c. **influential,** *adjective*	Having the power to affect someone or something
d. **insecure,** *adjective*	Not safe; not protected enough
e. **sympathy,** *noun*	Pity; sorrow for another

_______________ 1. Walking through a dangerous neighborhood alone at night makes most people feel ___.

_______________ 2. The newlyweds ___ by using coupons and buying secondhand clothes.

_______________ 3. Having great ___ for the flood victims, people throughout the country sent money to help them.

_______________ 4. ___ has greatly affected farming; for instance, the workhorse has been replaced by the tractor.

_______________ 5. The *Daily Mirror* is such an ___ newspaper that the political candidates it supports almost always win.

f. **economy,** *noun*	The business affairs of a region, town, or country
g. **fulfillment,** *noun*	Achievement; completion
h. **secure,** *adjective*	Safe; protected
i. **sympathetically,** *adverb*	In a kindly way
j. **unfulfilled,** *adjective*	Not done; not achieved; not carried out

_______________ 6. For the young gymnast, competing at the Olympics was the ___ of a lifelong dream.

_______________ 7. When a factory closes down, it affects the whole town's ___, as the laid-off workers have little money to spend in local stores.

_______________ 8. Dad always buys more groceries than we need; it makes him feel ___ to know the cupboards are full of food.

_______________ 9. The minister spoke to the crying child very ___.

_______________ 10. The carpenters promised to fix the garage door four weeks ago, but so far, their promise is ___.

➢ Word Parts

A. The suffix *-ment* often means "the result, state, act, or process of ___."

Examples: *fulfillment* — the result of fulfilling
enjoyment — the state of enjoying

On each answer line, write the word from the box that means the same as the *italicized* words.

a. **astonishment°**	b. **fulfillment**	c. **management**
d. **replacement**	e. **statement**	

________ 1. The magician's surprising act filled us with a *state of being astonished°*.

________ 2. The *act of replacing* of our old kitchen floor was not easy. First we had to tear the old floor out before the new one could be put in.

________ 3. It is obvious that the *process of managing* of this company is excellent. The company is very successful, and the workers are very happy.

________ 4. For me, a small home in the country would be the *result of fulfilling* of a dream.

________ 5. Kareem likes to study for tests with another person. He says that the *act of stating* of an idea out loud to someone else helps him remember it better.

B. The suffixes *-ly* and *-ally* mean "in a certain way."

Examples: *economical* — thrifty
economically — in a thrifty way
secure — safe
securely — in a safe way

On each answer line, write the word from the box that best completes the item.

f. **consistently°**	g. **economically°**	h. **exactly**
i. **extravagantly°**	j. **securely**	

________ 6. Ralph may not be the perfect worker, but at least he is steady about one thing — he is ___ late for work each day.

________ 7. Before leaving on vacation, make sure the doors and windows are closed ___.

________ 8. Wanting to impress his date, Dan spent money ___ on lobster, champagne, and a hired limousine.

________ 9. If a math answer is not ___ right, you may not get full credit for it.

________ 10. The three families got a new lawn mower ___ by buying it together, then sharing it.

➣ *Final Check*

Read the passages carefully. Then fill in each blank with the word that best fits the context.

A. A Mismatched Couple

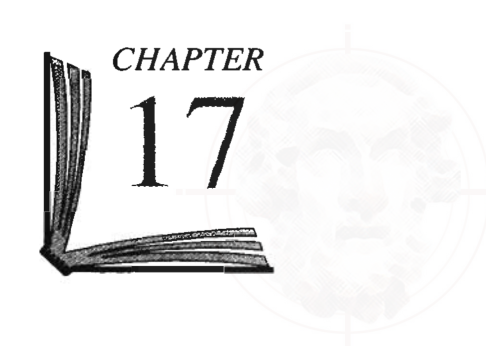
a. **burden**	b. **economical**	c. **extravagant**
d. **security**	e. **sympathize**	

Stacy and Ken have completely different attitudes° toward money. She is (1)______________________ to an extreme, always trying to get the best price on even the smallest purchase. Ken, on the other hand, is very (2)______________________. He loves to spend money on anything that catches his eye. If there's a dime in his pocket, he feels that it's a (3)______________________, as hard to carry around as a heavy load. He'll find something to spend it on just to be rid of it. Knowing she has money in case of accident or illness gives Stacy a feeling of (4)______________________, but Ken doesn't worry about the future. Each is puzzled by the other's "strange" behavior. Stacy sees Ken as wasteful and irresponsible, and Ken calls Stacy cheap. He can't (5)______________________ with her when she's worried about an empty bank account. Since they have very little tolerance° for each other's views on money, no one was surprised when these two got divorced.

B. A Campaign to Become Class President

f. **apparent**	g. **automatic**	h. **fulfill**
i. **influence**	j. **transfer**	

In her senior year, Holly wanted very much to be elected class president. But she knew that the other girl who was competing for the office was much better known and had more experience in student government. As a result, Holly began to do all she could to (6)______________________ her classmates so that they would vote for her. She found herself promising them anything they asked for. "If I'm elected," she told one student, "I will see that the school puts in (7)______________________ doors to make it easy to enter when our arms are full of books." To another, she said that a hot tub would be installed in the school gym. She promised a third student that he could (8)______________________ to the school across town that his girlfriend attended. As the election drew near, it became (9)______________________ that Holly had a good chance of winning. This scared her because she realized that she could not (10)______________________ all her promises. Finally, she quit the race, saying she couldn't maintain° her grades and serve as class president too. She felt foolish for having let her desire to win run away with her good sense.





appropriate	**emotion**
bewilder	**fiction**
communicate	**investigate**
deceive	**legible**
earnest	**theory**

Ten Words in Context

In the space provided, write the letter of the meaning closest to that of each **boldfaced** word. Use the context of the sentences to help you figure out each word's meaning.

1 appropriate /əˈprəʊprɪət/ – *adjective*

- While it's **appropriate** to scream at a football game, such behavior is not considered proper at the ballet.
- Hiking boots aren't **appropriate** for jogging — they are too stiff and heavy.

___ *Appropriate* means a. legal. b. unusual. c. correct.

2 bewilder /bɪˈwɪldə(r)/ – *verb*

- The large new school at first **bewildered** Chung, but after a day or two, getting around was no longer confusing to him.
- My grandmother's poor health **bewildered** her doctor until he found out she wasn't taking her medicines.

___ *Bewilder* means a. to calm. b. to puzzle. c. to attract.

3 communicate /kəˈmjuːnɪkeɪt/ – *verb*

- Alice and I rarely see each other, but we **communicate** often by sending letters and making phone calls.
- Today, many people **communicate** with each other by using the electronic mail service on their computers.

___ *Communicate* means a. to call. b. to exchange information. c. to visit.

4 deceive /dɪˈsiːv/ – *verb*

- Linda **deceived** Jason by dating him without telling him that she was married.
- A business owner who tries to **deceive** customers should be reported to the police.

___ *Deceive* means a. to help. b. to find. c. to fool.

5 earnest /ˈɜːnɪst/ – *adjective*

- I like our new baby sitter because she is very **earnest**; she clearly takes her job very seriously.
- Jimmy seemed **earnest** when he promised to clean the windows by Friday, so I was surprised to see he hadn't done them.

___ *Earnest* means a. confused. b. quiet. c. serious.

6 emotion /ɪˈməʊʃən/ – *noun*

- Stan rarely shows his **emotions**. We have to guess what he is really feeling.
- Many people have trouble talking about their **emotions**, especially anger and fear.

___ *Emotion* means a. feeling. b. explanation. c. movement.

7 fiction
/ˈfɪkʃən/
– noun

- One of Mark Twain's most amusing pieces of **fiction** is his story about a Connecticut man who travels back to the time of King Arthur.
- Some newspapers print obvious **fiction**, such as, "Nine-year-old girl has triplets who weigh 100 pounds more than she does!"

___ *Fiction* means a. news. b. made-up writing. c. facts.

8 investigate
/ɪnˈvestɪgeɪt/
– verb

- The FBI has been called in to **investigate** the disappearance of the baby from the hospital.
- When I heard a noise downstairs at 3 a.m., I lay still in bed, too frightened to get up and **investigate** the situation.

___ *Investigate* means a. look into. b. delay. c. exchange.

9 legible
/ˈledʒəbl/
– adjective

- My father used to make me rewrite my sloppy homework. "I can barely read this," he would say. "Make it **legible**."
- The fancy script on that new restaurant sign isn't very **legible**. Does it say "Peretti's," "Perelli's," or "Pepetti's"?

___ *Legible* means a. easy to believe. b. easy to read. c. easy to prove.

10 theory
/ˈθɪərɪ/
– noun

- According to the **theory** of evolution, plants and animals have developed in ways that help them do well in their environment.
- The police's **theory** was that the killer was a short man with dark hair, but the murderer turned out to be a blond woman wearing a dark wig.

___ *Theory* means a. action. b. explanation. c. question.

Matching Words with Definitions

Following are definitions of the ten words. **Print** each word next to its definition. If you look closely at each word in context, you will be able to figure out its meaning.

1. ______________ To exchange or give information
2. ______________ To confuse; puzzle
3. ______________ Serious and sincere
4. ______________ A strong feeling
5. ______________ A statement that explains events or facts; an explanation, often unproven
6. ______________ Clear enough to be read
7. ______________ Literature consisting of imaginary stories; anything made up
8. ______________ Proper; suited to a certain use or purpose
9. ______________ To make (someone) believe something that is not true
10. ______________ To explore or examine carefully in order to learn the facts

CAUTION: Do not go any further until you are sure the above answers are correct. Then you can use the definitions to help you in the following practices. Your goal is eventually to know the words well enough so that you don't need to check the definitions at all.

➣ *Sentence Check 1*

Using the answer line, complete each item below with the correct word from the box.

a. **appropriate**	b. **bewilder**	c. **communicate**	d. **deceive**	e. **earnest**
f. **emotion**	g. **fiction**	h. **investigate**	i. **legible**	j. **theory**

________________ 1. At the fancy dinner, Sheila watched her hostess to see which fork was ___ for each course.

________________ 2. Charlotte's sweet smiles don't ___ me. I know that she really dislikes me.

________________ 3. Dolphins ___ with one another through a language of squeaks and grunts.

________________ 4. At first, the many noises, flashing lights, and whirling rides at the fair ___ed the children.

________________ 5. Murphy has a ___ about life. He believes that everything that can possibly go wrong, will.

________________ 6. When we go on our walks, my dog ___s every bush and tree we come across.

________________ 7. Ten years ago, I carved my initials in a tree. Recently I was surprised to see that they were still ___.

________________ 8. When Gordon begged his boss for another chance, he seemed so ___ that his employer decided to give him his job back.

________________ 9. When I want to relax, I read love stories, mysteries, and other kinds of ___.

________________ 10. Which do you think is the more powerful ___, love or hate?

➣ *Sentence Check 2*

Using the answer lines, complete each item below with **two** words from the box.

____
________________ 1–2. Agatha Christie wrote wonderful works of ___ about Miss Marple, a woman who loved to ___ crimes the police could not solve.

____
________________ 3–4. Some people believe the ___ that you can teach yourself to write well with either hand, but when I use my left hand, what I write is not ___.

____
________________ 5–6. The lost little girl spoke no English, so the police officer's attempts to ___ with her only ___ed her more.

____
________________ 7–8. The man claiming to have lost his wallet seemed so ___ that I believed him and gave him money, but when I saw him doing the same thing a week later, I knew he had ___d me.

____
________________ 9–10. Many people feel a powerful mixture of ___s at special events; for example, it is considered ___ to cry at weddings, even though it is a happy time.

Related Words

Once you learn a new word, you can more easily understand many related words. Below are ten words related to the core words of this chapter. Use their definitions to help you write in the word that best completes each item.

Word	Definition
a. **bewilderment**, *noun*	Confusion
b. **communication**, *noun*	Making information known
c. **deception**, *noun*	An act of making someone believe something that is not true; a lie or trick
d. **investigator**, *noun*	A person who studies facts or a situation in order to learn the truth
e. **nonfiction**, *noun*	Writing that is about real life, not made-up ideas

________________ 1. Radio, television, newspapers, letters, and, of course, conversation, are all forms of ___.

________________ 2. The museum officials who paid millions of dollars for the fake Picasso painting were angry and embarrassed when they discovered the ___.

________________ 3. When Mr. Burns's wife became suspicious, she hired an ___, who learned that Mr. Burns had three wives in three different cities. When she confronted° him with this fact, she had some harsh° things to say.

________________ 4. Truman Capote's book *In Cold Blood: The True Story of a Multiple Murder* is a piece of ___ that tells the story of the 1959 killing of a farm family in Kansas.

________________ 5. Imagine my ___ when I came home to what I thought was an empty house and heard voices call out, "Surprise! Happy Birthday!"

Word	Definition
f. **emotional**, *adjective*	Having to do with feelings
g. **fictional**, *adjective*	Made-up; not true
h. **illegible**, *adjective*	Not able to be read
i. **investigation**, *noun*	The act of examining or exploring something
j. **theorize**, *verb*	To think up a possible explanation for something

________________ 6. Professor Chaplin talks too quickly. When I try to take notes on her lectures, I have to hurry so much that my writing is ___.

________________ 7. Certain musical notes and chords make many people feel like crying. Why is it that music can have such a strong ___ effect?

________________ 8. The reporters spent a year on an ___ to prepare for their series of articles about why the city's crime rate is so high.

________________ 9. Over the years, many people have claimed to see a huge animal in a lake in Scotland; some people ___ that it is some sort of dinosaur.

________________ 10. In the novel *Lost Horizon*, the author wrote of the ___ land of Shangri-La, where people stay young for hundreds of years.

➢ *Synonyms and Antonyms*

A. Synonyms. Write the letter of the word or phrase that most nearly means the **same** as each boldfaced word.

____ 1. **bewilder**

a. make certain
b. release
c. insist
d. confuse

____ 2. **communicate**

a. hide
b. make known
c. remove
d. forget

____ 3. **emotion**

a. feeling
b. energy
c. excuse
d. movement

____ 4. **investigate**

a. puzzle
b. write
c. inspect
d. fool

____ 5. **theory**

a. agreement
b. problem
c. explanation
d. question

B. Antonyms. Write the letter of the word or phrase that most nearly means the **opposite** of each boldfaced word.

____ 6. **appropriate**

a. not healthy
b. not proper
c. not believable
d. not ready

____ 7. **deceive**

a. stay away from
b. argue
c. tell the truth to
d. find

____ 8. **earnest**

a. not sincere
b. unusual
c. not accurate
d. not perfect

____ 9. **fiction**

a. justice
b. ability
c. reason
d. fact

____ 10. **legible**

a. not for sale
b. not lasting
c. not on purpose
d. not readable

➣ *Final Check*

Read the passages carefully. Then fill in each blank with the word that best fits the context.

A. The Famous Detective

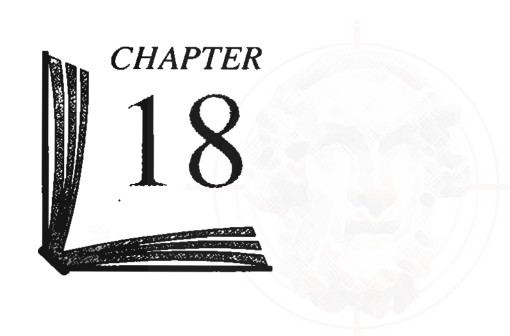
a. **deceive**	b. **emotion**	c. **fiction**
d. **investigate**	e. **theory**	

One of the most famous characters from the world of (1)____________________ is Sherlock Holmes, created by the writer Arthur Conan Doyle. Holmes first appeared in a story Doyle wrote in 1887. It was called "A Study in Scarlet." Holmes was a detective. No criminal, no matter how clever, could (2)____________________ him for long. Rather than being affected by (3)____________________s such as fear or hate, he used his great powers of thinking to solve crimes. As he (4)____________________d crimes, he noticed important small details that were not apparent° to others. Then it would not be long before he developed a perfect (5)____________________ to explain the crime.

B. Why So Quiet?

f. **appropriate**	g. **bewilder**	h. **communicate**
i. **earnest**	j. **legible**	

I still remember my first day in first grade. My first-grade teacher probably does, too. I had grown up in a very large, very noisy family. Everybody yelled, all the time. It wasn't because we were angry. There were just so many of us that we thought it was the only way to (6)____________________. I didn't realize that our characteristic° loudness wasn't typical of all families. So I went into school believing that when you wanted to be heard, the (7)____________________ thing to do was yell your head off. My teacher was a very gentle person. She talked slowly and never, ever raised her voice. I remember her writing her name on the board in large, (8)____________________ letters and saying, "My name is Mrs. Henderson. Can you say 'Mrs. Henderson,' boys and girls?" My shy classmates whispered, "Mrs. Henderson." I shouted, "MRS. HENDERSON!!" at the top of my lungs (I don't exaggerate° — I was really loud). Throughout the day, my classmates continued to whisper, and I continued to shout. By the end of the first day, school had totally (9)____________________ed me. I was so confused that I thought I had been assigned to the wrong class. I went home and told my parents I wanted to be in class with people who "talked right." I wasn't kidding — I was completely (10)____________________. It took a couple of weeks for me to figure out how to fit in with my quieter classmates.



CHAPTER 18



assure	**humiliate**
crucial	**impulse**
distract	**perceive**
extraordinary	**revive**
hostile	**timid**

Ten Words in Context

In the space provided, write the letter of the meaning closest to that of each **boldfaced** word. Use the context of the sentences to help you figure out each word's meaning.

1 assure
/əˈʃʊə(r)/
– verb

- If you leave jewelry in your hotel room, the hotel cannot **assure** you that it will be safe.
- I asked the salesclerk, "Can you **assure** me that this watch is really waterproof?"

___ *Assure* means a. to remind. b. to agree with. c. to promise.

2 crucial
/ˈkruːʃəl/
– adjective

- The trial had to stop when a **crucial** witness suddenly disappeared.
- Protein is a **crucial** part of a healthy diet.

___ *Crucial* means a. rare. b. necessary. c. useless.

3 distract
/dɪsˈtrækt/
– verb

- I have trouble studying when noises from outside **distract** me.
- The children made funny faces at the actress, trying to **distract** her as she performed her part.

___ *Distract* means a. to frighten greatly. b. to draw away the attention of. c. to give support to.

4 extraordinary
/ɪkˈstrɔːdənərɪ/
– adjective

- The restaurant made **extraordinary** attempts to attract new customers, even giving away free meals on certain days.
- The cancer patient inspired others with the **extraordinary** courage she showed in dealing with her illness.

___ *Extraordinary* means a. unfriendly. b. normal. c. very unusual.

5 hostile
/ˈhɒstaɪl/
– adjective

- The **hostile** crowd threw tomatoes and eggs at the speaker.
- The cat acted **hostile** towards the new kitten, snarling and spitting at it.

___ *Hostile* means a. fearful. b. unfriendly. c. embarrassed.

6 humiliate
/ˈhjuːmɪlɪeɪt/
– verb

- Good teachers do not **humiliate** students for making mistakes by calling them names or holding up their work for everyone to see.
- In dreams, people often **humiliate** themselves by doing things like going outdoors without their clothing on.

___ *Humiliate* means a. to shame. b. to show off. c. to misunderstand.

7 impulse
/ˈɪmpʌls/
– noun

- People who go food shopping when they are hungry often get an **impulse** to buy something they don't really need.
- Carmen had planned on staying home alone, but at the last minute she had an **impulse** to phone her new neighbors and invite them to come over that evening for coffee and cake.

___ *Impulse* means a. unplanned desire. b. view. c. fear.

8 perceive
/pəˈsiːv/
– verb

- I **perceive** from the wonderful smell that someone is barbecuing ribs.
- Hawks have such good eyesight that they can **perceive** a tiny mouse from hundreds of feet in the air.

___ *Perceive* means a. to remember. b. to include. c. to notice.

9 revive
/rɪˈvaɪv/
– verb

- If you've lost all desire to learn biology, Professor Berg, who is a wonderful teacher, will **revive** your interest in that subject.
- No matter how tired our dog is, the question "Want to go for a walk?" will **revive** him.

___ *Revive* means a. to show. b. to bring back to life. c. to embarrass.

10 timid
/ˈtɪmɪd/
– adjective

- When her parents tried to introduce her to guests, the **timid** child hid under the table.
- Ever since he almost drowned in a boating accident, Jared has been **timid** about going in the water.

___ *Timid* means a. frightened. b. careless. c. full of energy.

Matching Words with Definitions

Following are definitions of the ten words. **Print** each word next to its definition. If you look closely at each word in context, you will be able to figure out its meaning.

1. ____________________ To make (someone) sure about something; tell with certainty
2. ____________________ Fearful or shy; lacking in self-confidence
3. ____________________ To make ashamed; embarrass
4. ____________________ Extremely important
5. ____________________ Unfriendly; having or showing ill will
6. ____________________ To give new energy, spirit, or strength
7. ____________________ A sudden urge to do something
8. ____________________ Beyond the ordinary; special
9. ____________________ To cause to turn away from what one was paying attention to
10. ____________________ To be or to become aware of through one's senses; see, hear, feel, taste, or smell

CAUTION: Do not go any further until you are sure the above answers are correct. Then you can use the definitions to help you in the following practices. Your goal is eventually to know the words well enough so that you don't need to check the definitions at all.

Sentence Check 1

Using the answer line, complete each item below with the correct word from the box.

a. **assure**	b. **crucial**	c. **distract**	d. **extraordinary**	e. **hostile**
f. **humiliate**	g. **impulse**	h. **perceive**	i. **revive**	j. **timid**

________ 1. Bullies ___ other people in order to make themselves feel powerful.

________ 2. The football game on TV ___ed Tyrell from his homework.

________ 3. My boss ___s me that I will get a raise soon.

________ 4. The flowers in the garden were beginning to droop in the dry weather, but a heavy rain shower soon ___d them.

________ 5. Grocery store managers often place candy bars, combs, and other small, inexpensive items near the checkout, hoping that shoppers will have an ___ to buy them.

________ 6. To succeed at a job interview, it is ___ that you arrive on time.

________ 7. Because parents know their children so well, they can often ___ that the children are not feeling well just by looking at them.

________ 8. Two of my coworkers are very ___ toward each other; their unfriendly relationship makes work difficult for others as well.

________ 9. Thea felt too ___ to raise her hand when the magician asked for volunteers.

________ 10. The newspaper carried a story about an ___ woman who uses a wheelchair and is still a terrific tennis player.

Sentence Check 2

Using the answer lines, complete each item below with **two** words from the box.

____
________ 1–2. When Len's boss ___d him in front of his coworkers, he felt a sudden ___ to grab the man's necktie and snip it off with scissors.

____
________ 3–4. Once I began to ___ the aroma of fried chicken, I stopped doing my homework because I was so ___ed by the wonderful smell.

____
________ 5–6. The builders know it is ___ that the bathroom be finished before our visitors arrive next week, and they have ___d us the work will be done.

____
________ 7–8. When Sandra got the chance to work with an ___ coach — one who had coached many champions — it ___d her dream of someday competing in the Olympics.

____
________ 9–10. The more ___ the angry, impatient bus driver became, the more he frightened the ___ little girl who had lost her bus ticket.

Related Words

Once you learn a new word, you can more easily understand many related words. Below are ten words related to the core words of this chapter. Use their definitions to help you write in the word that best completes each item.

a. **assurance**, *noun*	A promise
b. **distraction**, *noun*	Something that draws one's attention in another direction
c. **humiliation**, *noun*	Shame; embarrassment
d. **reassure**, *verb*	To make less fearful or worried
e. **revival**, *noun*	A new presentation of an old play, opera, etc.

______________ 1. Although the company was sold, the new owner ___d the workers that they would not lose their jobs.

______________ 2. The wall between the two theaters is thin, so moviegoers have to put up with the ___ of hearing the other movie going on next door.

______________ 3. Can you give me your ___ that my car will be fixed today?

______________ 4. I'd like to see a ___ of the musical *Peter Pan* with Whitney Houston playing the part of Tinkerbell.

______________ 5. During his cooking demonstration, Chris experienced the ___ of dropping a dozen eggs on the floor in front of his entire class.

f. **hostility**, *noun*	Unfriendliness; anger
g. **impulsive**, *adjective*	Likely to take action quickly, without much thought
h. **perception**, *noun*	Becoming aware through use of the senses; awareness
i. **perceptive**, *verb*	Quick to notice things and understand situations
j. **timidity**, *noun*	Shyness; fear; lack of confidence

______________ 6. Jessie is often ___. She does things without thinking — such as suddenly painting her kitchen purple — and then is sorry.

______________ 7. Animals' ___ of colors differs from people's ability to see colors. For example, bees cannot see red, but they can see ultraviolet light.

______________ 8. Although Rita said, "I forgive you," her voice was so full of ___ that it was clear she wasn't earnest°. She wasn't ready to forgive.

______________ 9. A good detective is very ___, not missing a detail as he investigates° a crime.

______________ 10. As a teenager, I often had to deal with ___. I would frequently stay in my room rather than speak to someone I didn't know well.

Word Parts

A. The suffix *-ity* means "the quality or state of being ___."

Examples: *timid* — shy
timidity — the quality or state of being shy

On each answer line, write the word from the box that best completes the item.

a. **brutality°**	b. **generosity**	c. **hostility**
d. **security°**	e. **timidity**	

______ 1. Mrs. Lee likes the ___ of living in an apartment that's on the tenth floor, where no thieves can enter through the windows.

______ 2. Everyone was amazed by the ___ of the man who won a huge lottery prize and then gave it all away to charity.

______ 3. There are laws to protect animals from ___; it is against the law to beat or otherwise harm them.

______ 4. Ever since Margo asked Rose's boyfriend out on a date, there has been ___ between the two women.

______ 5. If you suffer from ___, you can learn to be less shy through practice. Every day, try to do one brave thing, such as speaking up at work or starting a conversation.

B. The suffixes *-able* and *-ible* can mean "able to be ___."

Examples: *perceive* — to notice through one's senses
perceptible — able to be noticed through use of the senses

On each answer line, write the word from the box that best completes the item.

f. **manageable**	g. **perceptible**	h. **readable**
i. **transferable**	j. **usable**	

______ 6. Nadia's handwriting is so bad that it is usually not even ___.

______ 7. If you decide to leave this college and go to another, you may lose some credits — some of your credits may not be ___.

______ 8. I have tons of homework to do this weekend, but it is ___. If I use my time well, I can handle it.

______ 9. The odor of fried fish is ___ in the house even hours after we've had dinner.

______ 10. These bananas are too ripe, but they are still ___ for banana bread. You could also freeze them and utilize° them later in fruit drinks.

Final Check

Read the passages carefully. Then fill in each blank with the word that best fits the context.

A. Fear of Speaking

a. **distract**	b. **hostile**	c. **humiliate**
d. **impulse**	e. **timid**	

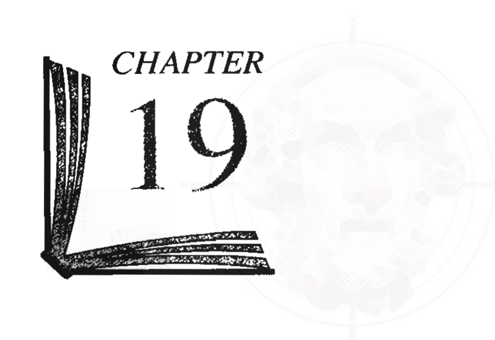
Some people are afraid of spiders. Others fear heights. But for many people, the scariest thing of all is having to speak in front of a group of strangers. Even people who are not usually (1)____________________ often have an intense° fear of speaking in public. They often imagine that the audience will be (2)____________________, even when it is actually friendly. Because they are so sure that they will (3)____________________ themselves, they usually manage to do just that. They are so awkward° when they walk to the front of the room that they almost trip over their own feet. When they begin to speak, their hands flutter, causing the papers they are holding to shake loudly. This annoying noise (4)____________________s the audience from what the speakers are trying to say. Embarrassed by their poor performance, the unfortunate speakers have to fight the (5)____________________ to crawl under a chair and hide. One of the best things people like this can do for themselves is to take a course in public speaking. Even if they never learn to love public speaking, they can learn to face an audience without feeling frightened.

B. Do You Believe in Magic?

f. **assure**	g. **crucial**	h. **extraordinary**
i. **perceive**	j. **revive**	

Have you ever wondered how magic tricks work? Magicians work hard to make their tricks look like authentic° magic. But no magician has done what Horace Goldin did to make a trick look real. Goldin performed the well-known act in which a volunteer from the crowd is placed in a box, cut in half, and then reconnected right in front of the audience. But Goldin's trick was (6)____________________ because of a special added twist. After the victim was sawed in half and reconnected, the audience was (7)____________________d that the volunteer was fine and could return to his seat. When the man stood up, however, the top half of his body appeared to separate and fall to the floor. Meanwhile the bottom half also fell, but then it (8)____________________d, got up, and ran off the stage! The trick totally bewildered° the audience.

How did Goldin do it? The secret was the volunteer, a close friend of Goldin's. The volunteer had a twin brother who had no legs. What the audience (9)____________________d as the volunteer's upper half was really the legless twin. The separate walking legs were just a short person wearing normal-sized pants. In 1921, however, the legless twin brother demanded a higher salary. When Goldin refused to pay, the twin quit the act. With a (10)____________________ part of the act gone, Goldin had to stop performing the trick.





abandon	**function**
alert	**idle**
circumstances	**overcome**
devote	**primary**
dominate	**theme**

Ten Words in Context

In the space provided, write the letter of the meaning closest to that of each **boldfaced** word. Use the context of the sentences to help you figure out each word's meaning.

1 abandon
/ə'bændən/
– verb

- When it got dark out, the divers had to **abandon** their search for the body of the woman who had drowned.
- Because they ran out of money, the scientists had to **abandon** their research project.

___ *Abandon* means a. to begin. b. to sell. c. to quit.

2 alert
/ə'lɜːt/
– adjective

- If you are riding a bicycle on a busy city street, you need to be **alert** at all times.
- Many people need a cup of coffee in the morning to make them feel really **alert**.

___ *Alert* means a. bad-tempered. b. well dressed. c. fully awake.

3 circumstances
/'sɜːkəmstənsɪz/
– noun

- My sister and brother-in-law had a big argument about something yesterday, but I do not know the exact **circumstances**.
- Here are the main **circumstances** of the robbery: A man wearing a Santa Claus mask took some money from a toy store.

___ *Circumstances* means a. facts. b. answers. c. people.

4 devote
/dɪ'vəʊt/
– verb

- The kids **devoted** the entire evening to playing video games.
- Professor Morales **devoted** her life to the study of ancient Egypt.

___ *Devote* means a. to look over. b. to give over. c. to win over.

5 dominate
/'dɒmɪneɪt/
– verb

- McDonald's and Burger King seem to **dominate** the country's burger market.
- My brother likes to dream about a time when his favorite team will be so good that it will **dominate** football.

___ *Dominate* means a. to take pity on. b. to be a leader in. c. to lose interest in.

6 function
/'fʌŋkʃən/
– noun

- A waiter's **function** is to take the diners' orders and then to bring them their food.
- What is the **function** of that red button on the front of the VCR?

___ *Function* means a. purpose. b. subject. c. length of time.

7 idle
/ˈaɪdl/
– adjective

- After being at home for a week with the flu, I was sick of being **idle** and happy to get back to work.
- When the boss is out of town, many of the workers in this store are **idle** much of the time.

___ *Idle* means a. not busy. b. outside. c. in a group.

8 overcome
/ˌəʊvəˈkʌm/
– verb

- My brother had to **overcome** a learning disability to become a successful student.
- With the help of swimming lessons, I **overcame** my fear of water.

___ *Overcome* means a. to know. b. to write about. c. to beat.

9 primary
/ˈpraɪmərɪ/
– adjective

- My brother's **primary** interest in life seems to be playing basketball — he practices day and night.
- The **primary** reason for the family reunion is to celebrate Grandma's ninetieth birthday.

___ *Primary* means a. easiest. b. forgotten. c. main.

10 theme
/θiːm/
– noun

- The writing assignment is a five-hundred-word paper on the **theme** "a surprising event."
- *Romeo and Juliet* and *West Side Story* share the same **theme**: young lovers separated by the hatred of others.

___ *Theme* means a. answer. b. rule. c. idea.

Matching Words with Definitions

Following are definitions of the ten words. **Print** each word next to its definition. If you look closely at each word in context, you will be able to figure out its meaning.

1. ________________ Most important; major
2. ________________ To win in a struggle over; defeat
3. ________________ To stop trying to continue; discontinue; quit
4. ________________ To give one's time or attention completely to something or someone
5. ________________ The expected activity of a person or thing; purpose; role
6. ________________ Wide-awake and watchful; highly aware
7. ________________ Not doing anything; inactive
8. ________________ To have a leading place or position in; be at the head of
9. ________________ Condition or facts of a particular situation or happening
10. ________________ The main subject; the topic around which something is organized

CAUTION: Do not go any further until you are sure the above answers are correct. Then you can use the definitions to help you in the following practices. Your goal is eventually to know the words well enough so that you don't need to check the definitions at all.

➣ *Sentence Check 1*

Using the answer line, complete each item below with the correct word from the box.

a. **abandon**	b. **alert**	c. **circumstances**	d. **devote**	e. **dominate**
f. **function**	g. **idle**	h. **overcome**	i. **primary**	j. **theme**

______________________ 1. An ___ person is wide-awake and very much aware of his or her surroundings.

______________________ 2. It is clear that the ___ reason my aunt's boyfriend likes her is her money.

______________________ 3. When my boss is just staring out the window, she looks ___, but she is really trying to figure out a problem.

______________________ 4. Dances often have a special ___, such as "Winter Wonderland."

______________________ 5. Before Cara can visit her grandparents in Italy, she needs to ___ her fear of flying in an airplane.

______________________ 6. When a friend called to ask if I wanted to go to the movies, I quickly ___ed my ironing and got ready to go out.

______________________ 7. The young skater ___s five hours each day to practicing.

______________________ 8. At first I thought Jorge was unfriendly, but when I learned the ___ of his life — he is a single parent who is also caring for his elderly father — I understood that he doesn't have much time to chat.

______________________ 9. A pen and a pencil have the same ___.

______________________ 10. Coca Cola and Pepsi ___ the cola market.

➣ *Sentence Check 2*

Using the answer lines, complete each item below with **two** words from the box.

____
______________________ 1–2. During the Depression of the 1930s, ___ were so bad that many young people had to ___ their education and go to work full-time.

____
______________________ 3–4. The boss was angry when he found us taking a long break. "Your ___ is to get work done," he snapped — "not to sit around ___!"

____
______________________ 5–6. "You'll have to read carefully to find the ___ of this story," our instructor said. Then he assured° us, "But if you are ___ and pay attention to every clue, I think you can figure out the author's true topic."

____
______________________ 7–8. Some women's ___ interest is their careers, and some ___ themselves to their families; others manage to do both.

____
______________________ 9–10. There are many true stories of very successful people who have ___ serious physical problems and gone on to ___ a sport.

➢ *Related Words*

Once you learn a new word, you can more easily understand many related words. Below are ten words related to the core words of this chapter. Use their definitions to help you write in the word that best completes each item.

Word	Definition
a. **devotion**, *noun*	Deep affection and loyalty
b. **dominant**, *adjective*	Having more influence or power than others
c. **idleness**, *noun*	The state of being inactive
d. **primarily**, *adverb*	Mainly; chiefly
e. **theme song**, *noun*	A melody which is regularly used on a TV show or movie or by an individual and which comes to stand for that show or movie or person

________________ 1. In my home, we ___ speak Spanish, unless we have English-speaking visitors. Then, of course, we communicate° in English.

________________ 2. When I was a teenager, it was the style to sign a love letter to your girlfriend or boyfriend with this rhyme: "Yours with an ocean of ___."

________________ 3. When I'm on vacation, I like to spend some time in total ___. I sleep late and rest all day.

________________ 4. Tim is the ___ partner in his marriage. He makes all the decisions, and his wife just says, "Yes, dear."

________________ 5. If Tim's wife had a ___, it would have to be "Stand By Your Man."

Word	Definition
f. **alertness**, *noun*	State or condition of being wide awake; full or intense awareness
g. **functional**, *adjective*	Working well
h. **idler**, *noun*	A lazy person
i. **prime**, *adjective*	First in importance or value
j. **theme park**, *noun*	An amusement park in which all the buildings, exhibits, and rides are built around a central subject

________________ 6. Barry is a terrible ___: he is at the water fountain, on the phone with friends, and on coffee breaks more often than he actually works.

________________ 7. When my son woke up after his operation, the nurse tested his ___ by asking questions such as "Where are you, Billy?" and "Do you know what day it is?"

________________ 8. My old car looks terrible, but it's still ___, taking me wherever I want to go.

________________ 9. I took my little niece to a ___ that is based on *Sesame Street*. The ideas of the rides and games are all from that show.

________________ 10. TV broadcasters can charge the most for ads that appear during ___ time, when most people are watching.

➢ *Synonyms and Antonyms*

A. Synonyms. Write the letter of the word or phrase that most nearly means the **same** as each boldfaced word.

____ 1. **circumstances**

a. conditions
b. jobs
c. activities
d. abilities

____ 2. **dominate**

a. lead
b. follow
c. be active
d. leave

____ 3. **devote**

a. get rid of
b. win over
c. hide from
d. give over to

____ 4. **function**

a. subject
b. fact
c. purpose
d. rule

____ 5. **theme**

a. fact
b. safety
c. use
d. subject

B. Antonyms. Write the letter of the word or phrase that most nearly means the **opposite** of each boldfaced word.

____ 6. **abandon**

a. leave
b. continue
c. lose
d. work badly

____ 7. **alert**

a. sleepy
b. curious
c. complete
d. late

____ 8. **idle**

a. new
b. stiff
c. active
d. grateful

____ 9. **overcome**

a. win
b. follow
c. continue
d. give in to

____10. **primary**

a. least expensive
b. least important
c. not enough
d. not prepared

➣ *Final Check*

Read the passages carefully. Then fill in each blank with the word that best fits the context.

A. The Miracle Runner

a. **devote**	b. **dominate**	c. **idle**
d. **primary**	e. **overcome**	

Glenn Cunningham was one of the most famous and extraordinary° athletes of the 1930s. To succeed, he had to (1)____________________ difficulties that might have stopped anyone. When Glenn was 8, he and his older brother Floyd were trapped in a burning building. Floyd was killed, and Glenn was badly burned. The fire had eaten deep into his legs, and the toes of one foot were gone. In fact, doctors advised° his parents to have Glenn's legs taken off. Glenn lay in bed for months, his legs thin as sticks. He hated being (2)____________________, so he struggled to learn to stand and then to take a few steps. Then he began to run. At first, his (3)____________________ goal in running was just to get rid of his limp. Then he discovered that he was a very good runner.

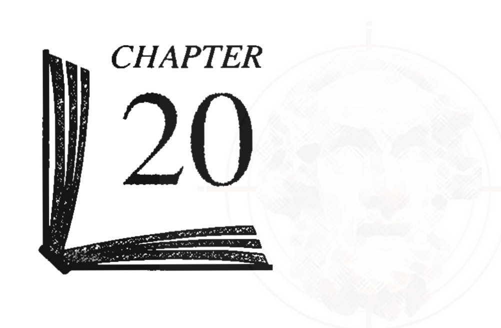
At age 13, Glenn entered a mile race at a local fair and won easily. From then on, he (4)____________________d himself to running — and to winning. In high school, then in college, and later when he was a member of the United States Olympic team, he (5)____________________d his sport. He set a world-record time for running the mile: 4 minutes, 4.4 seconds. And this was someone who had been told he would never walk again!

B. One of Those Days

f. **abandon**	g. **alert**	h. **circumstances**
i. **function**	j. **theme**	

Did you ever have a day whose (6)____________________ seems to be "things that go wrong"? I had one such day last Friday. This is the only day I have a class at 8 a.m. But my alarm clock did not perform its (7)____________________ — it did not make a sound. I had no time to eat, but because I was sleepy, I made a cup of coffee to help me feel more (8)____________________. When I poured milk into the coffee, though, I found that the milk was sour. Yuck! So I (9)____________________ed my effort to have a cup of coffee, grabbed my car keys, and ran out. Then I remembered my car was in the shop for repairs. So I raced to the bus stop, but got there just as the bus drove off. Desperate° to get to school, I decided to continue on foot, so I began running again. Then along came a car that hit a deep puddle and splashed me from head to foot with mud.

At school, I told the instructor the (10)____________________ that had made me late, muddy, and out of breath. Looking annoyed that I had disrupted° the class, he told me to hand in my assignment. At that point, I discovered I had brought the wrong textbook and notebook. I decided then and there that the next time I oversleep, I'll just stay in bed!



disregard	**monotonous**
excerpt	**obtain**
exclude	**prey**
hinder	**seize**
misleading	**severe**

Ten Words in Context

In the space provided, write the letter of the meaning closest to that of each **boldfaced** word. Use the context of the sentences to help you figure out each word's meaning.

1 disregard /ˌdɪsrɪˈgɑːd/ – *verb*

- I suggested that Patty put some of her money in a savings account, but she **disregarded** my idea and spent it all.
- The drive with Luis was frightening — he **disregarded** the speed limit, even though the road was icy.

___ *Disregard* means a. to follow. b. to ignore. c. to get in the way of.

2 excerpt /ˈeksɜːpt/ – *noun*

- The *New York Times* printed all of the President's speech, but most newspapers printed only **excerpts** from it.
- Previews advertise films by showing several **excerpts**, parts that will make people want to come see the whole movie.

___ *Excerpt* means a. part. b. price. c. speech.

3 exclude /ɪksˈkluːd/ – *verb*

- In making pickles that will be stored for a long time, air must be **excluded** from the jars.
- The little boy ran crying to his teacher after other children **excluded** him from their game.

___ *Exclude* means a. to watch. b. to invite. c. to keep out.

4 hinder /ˈhɪndə(r)/ – *verb*

- Not having computer skills **hindered** Jane in her search for an office job.
- Bad weather **hindered** the climbers on their hike up the mountain.

___ *Hinder* means a. to get in the way of. b. to cheer up. c. to find.

5 misleading /ˌmɪsˈliːdɪŋ/ – *adjective*

- The fact that the two close friends have the same last name is **misleading**. Many people think they are really sisters.
- My cousin may appear rich, but his fancy car and nice clothes are **misleading**. In reality, he owes thousands of dollars on his credit card.

___ *Misleading* means a. hard to find. b. recent. c. giving the wrong idea.

6 monotonous /məˈnɒtənəs/ – *adjective*

- The child in the supermarket kept up a **monotonous** request — "I want some candy. I want some candy. I want some candy."
- My days had become **monotonous**: I got up, went to work, came home, slept, then did it all over again.

___ *Monotonous* means a. dull. b. pleasant. c. messy.

7 obtain
/əbˈteɪn/
– verb

- After completing the Driver's Education class, Maria **obtained** a driver's license.
- The soldier **obtained** a three-day pass in order to attend his sister's wedding.

___ *Obtain* means a. to grab. b. to get. c. to give away.

8 prey
/preɪ/
– noun

- Because a cat's **prey** includes mice, farmers like to keep cats in their barns.
- Movie stars are the **prey** of thoughtless photographers who will do anything to get a photo.

___ *Prey* means a. those that are hunted. b. part of a whole. c. sickness.

9 seize
/siːz/
– verb

- The woman screamed when a thief **seized** her pocketbook.
- Before anyone could stop him, the baby **seized** the cat's tail and pulled.

___ *Seize* means a. to laugh at. b. to grab. c. to know.

10 severe
/sɪˈvɪə(r)/
– adjective

- A **severe** storm hit our area, causing great damage and several deaths.
- Patients with the most **severe** illnesses are kept in a separate part of the hospital, where they receive special care.

___ *Severe* means a. fair. b. dangerous. c. boring.

Matching Words with Definitions

Following are definitions of the ten words. **Print** each word next to its definition. If you look closely at each word in context, you will be able to figure out its meaning.

1. ____________________ A creature or creatures that are hunted by another animal; the victim or victims of an attack
2. ____________________ Part of a whole work (such as a book, speech, or film)
3. ____________________ To pay no attention to
4. ____________________ To refuse to allow in; not include
5. ____________________ To get something through planning or effort
6. ____________________ Leading to a mistake in thought or action
7. ____________________ Boring because of lack of change or differences
8. ____________________ Causing great physical or mental suffering; very serious
9. ____________________ To take hold of suddenly or with force
10. ____________________ To stop or slow down (someone or something); block; interfere with

CAUTION: Do not go any further until you are sure the above answers are correct. Then you can use the definitions to help you in the following practices. Your goal is eventually to know the words well enough so that you don't need to check the definitions at all.

Sentence Check 1

Using the answer line, complete each item below with the correct word from the box.

a. **disregard**	b. **excerpt**	c. **exclude**	d. **hinder**	e. **misleading**
f. **monotonous**	g. **obtain**	h. **prey**	i. **seize**	j. **severe**

__________ 1. Cynthia's bright smile is ___; actually, she is feeling quite angry.

__________ 2. The robbers' usual ___ were newlyweds whose houses might contain expensive wedding gifts.

__________ 3. My aunt is a vegetarian and ___s all meat from her house.

__________ 4. A huge snowstorm ___ed Thanksgiving travelers.

__________ 5. Although the car wasn't damaged much in the crash, the driver had ___ injuries.

__________ 6. No matter how much you like your favorite food, having it at every meal would soon become ___.

__________ 7. Members of the Environmental Club went door-to-door to ___ signatures for their request to set up a recycling center in town.

__________ 8. The video called *The Best of Johnny Carson* contains funny ___s from ten years of the *Tonight* show.

__________ 9. When she realized her train would leave in just an hour, Rita ___d her suitcase from the shelf and began stuffing clothes into it.

__________ 10. Phil lost his money when he ___ed the "Out of Order" sign and put two quarters in the jukebox.

Sentence Check 2

Using the answer lines, complete each item below with **two** words from the box.

____
__________ 1–2. It is striking to see a hawk drop out of the sky and ___ a field mouse, then fly away with its ___ in its claws.

____
__________ 3–4. When my uncle had a ___ illness, the doctor ___ed everyone from his hospital room except my aunt.

____
__________ 5–6. The TV ads for the movie used an ___ from the film that was ___. It was funny, but the movie was not a comedy at all.

____
__________ 7–8. Yolanda wanted to be first in line to ___ tickets for a very special concert, but the snowstorm ___ed her.

____
__________ 9–10. Because Wendy is so shy, she ___s invitations to go out, and as a result she stays home night after night and leads a very ___ life.

➣ *Related Words*

Once you learn a new word, you can more easily understand many related words. Below are ten words related to the core words of this chapter. Use their definitions to help you write in the word that best completes each item.

a. **exclusive**, *adjective*	Letting only certain people in
b. **hindrance**, *noun*	Something that gets in the way or holds back
c. **include**, *verb*	To take in (someone or something) as part of something larger
d. **monotony**, *noun*	Boredom
e. **severity**, *noun*	Seriousness

__________ 1. The icy sidewalk was such a ___ that I missed my bus.

__________ 2. When we heard our friend had been in an accident, we called the hospital to try to learn the ___ of her injuries.

__________ 3. I don't enjoy going to the zoo because I am bothered by the ___ of the animals' lives — they spend day after day idle° in the same small cages.

__________ 4. The Honor Club at our school is so ___ that only 5 percent of the student body is qualified to join.

__________ 5. The Honor Club ___s top students from the tenth, eleventh, and twelfth grades.

f. **exclusion**, *noun*	The act of leaving something out
g. **mislead**, *verb*	To lead (someone) to think what is not so
h. **monotone**, *noun*	A single, unchanging sound
i. **predator**, *noun*	An animal that lives by hunting other animals for food
j. **regardless of**, *preposition*	Without considering anyone or anything else; in spite of

__________ 6. Professor Woodworth speaks in such a dull ___ that students have a hard time staying alert° in his class.

__________ 7. It's easy to see that the tiger is a ___. Its sharp teeth are designed for ripping other animals to pieces.

__________ 8. Some advertisements purposely ___ people, making them believe the products are better than they really are. Companies should not be allowed to deceive° people that way.

__________ 9. Becoming a vegetarian means more than the ___ of meat from the diet. It also means creating a balanced diet that doesn't involve meat.

__________ 10. I don't enjoy working with Vic because he does what he likes ___ anyone else's opinions.

Analogies

Each item below starts with a pair of words in CAPITAL LETTERS. For each item, figure out the relationship between these two words. Then decide which of the choices (*a*, *b*, *c*, or *d*) expresses a similar relationship. Write the letter of your choice on the answer line. (All the repeated words in these items are from this unit.)

____ 1. MONOTONOUS : EXCITING ::
a. healthy : strong
b. film : camera
c. five : fifteen
d. hinder : help

____ 2. PREY : VICTIM ::
a. artist : painting
b. baby : infant
c. security° : lock
d. doctor : patient

____ 3. SEVERE : MILD ::
a. painful : pleasant
b. angry : frowning
c. harmful : dangerous
d. loud : noisy

____ 4. COMMUNICATE° : TELEPHONE ::
a. fiction° : book
b. distract° : attention
c. sweep : broom
d. screwdriver : nail

____ 5. EXTRAORDINARY° : COMMON ::
a. assure° : promise
b. chew : gum
c. mask : face
d. hostile° : friendly

____ 6. DISREGARD : IGNORE ::
a. recall : remember
b. important : silly
c. protect : reveal
d. sing : choir

____ 7. ECONOMICAL° : EXTRAVAGANT° ::
a. country : map
b. earnest° : sincere
c. pitch : ball
d. calm : worried

____ 8. PRETTY : UGLY ::
a. friendly : nice
b. timid° : brave
c. important : crucial°
d. difficult : burden°

____ 9. SEIZE : TAKE ::
a. exclude : include
b. embarrass : humiliate°
c. pull : push
d. shout : whisper

____ 10. PERCEIVE° : SENSES ::
a. lazy : idle°
b. song : music
c. write : letter
d. run : legs

➢ *Final Check*

Read the passages carefully. Then fill in each blank with the word that best fits the context.

A. Pregnancy and Alcohol

a. excerpt	b. exclude	c. hinder
d. misleading	e. severe	

If all goes well, an unborn baby thrives°, growing from a few cells into a healthy child. However, not all pregnancies go well. Sometimes, problems arise that (1)__________ the baby's development. Most of those problems just happen and are not within anyone's control. But one common cause of a baby's problems can be prevented: the mother's use of alcohol.

Here is an (2)__________ from a textbook discussion of alcohol and pregnancy: "A woman who drinks heavily during pregnancy can injure the brain of her unborn child." A child born to a heavy drinker is likely to have (3)__________ health problems, including a small head, unusual facial features, low intelligence, and a damaged heart.

But it would be (4)__________ to say that only heavy drinking is a problem during pregnancy. Even if a mother-to-be has just two drinks a week, she can harm her child's ability to pay attention and learn easily.

Exactly how much alcohol is too much for a pregnant woman? No one knows for sure. Until we know more, a pregnant woman is wise to (5)__________ alcohol from her life.

B. A Criminal with a Tail

f. disregard	g. monotonous	h. obtain
i. prey	j. seize	

One of the best-known, most extraordinary° criminals ever sentenced to Pennsylvania's Graterford Prison was not a thief, a murderer, or a cheat. In fact, he was not even human. Prisoner #C2559, also known as Pep, was a dog who was (6)__________d by police in 1924 and forced to spend the rest of his days behind bars. Pep got into trouble by attacking his neighbor's cat one hot summer afternoon. Unfortunately for Pep, his furry (7)__________ happened to belong to Gifford Pinchot, the governor of Pennsylvania. The angry governor (8)__________ed the fact that Pep was a dog and ordered an immediate trial. Without the ability to speak or (9)__________ a lawyer for himself, Pep was sent to jail for life.

In prison, however, Pep was treated more kindly. His fellow prisoners were very fond of him. Even though he was assigned to a cell and expected to work every day, Pep was allowed to transfer° from one cell to another whenever he wanted. His furry face and wagging tail were a welcome change in the otherwise (10)__________ world of the prison, where each day seemed like the one before it. When he died six years later, Pep was the most popular inmate in the entire prison.

UNIT FOUR: Review

The box at the right lists twenty-five words from Unit Four. Using the clues at the bottom of the page, fill in these words to complete the puzzle that follows.

abandon
alert
apparent
automatic
bewilder
crucial
deceive
distract
dominate
emotion
exclude
fulfill
function
hinder
hostile
humiliate
idle
impulse
influence
legible
monotonous
prey
security
seize
theory

ACROSS

1. Clear enough to be read
6. To confuse; puzzle
8. Protection; freedom from danger, fear, or worry
9. To carry out; achieve; do
10. Wide-awake and watchful
12. Not doing anything; inactive
16. Boring because of lack of change or differences
18. A creature or creatures that are hunted by another animal
21. Extremely important
22. Unfriendly; having or showing ill will
23. To take hold of suddenly or with force
24. To stop or slow down; block

DOWN

2. A sudden urge to do something
3. To discontinue; quit
4. To make (someone) believe something that is not true
5. To cause to turn away from what one was paying attention to
7. To have an effect on
10. Obvious; easy to see
11. A statement that explains events or facts
13. To have a leading place or position in; be at the head of
14. Moving or operating by itself
15. To make ashamed; embarrass
17. To refuse to allow in; not include
19. A strong feeling
20. The expected activity of a person or thing; purpose

UNIT FOUR: Test 1

PART A

Choose the word that best completes each item and write it in the space provided.

________ 1. When the children began screaming and throwing things on the bus, the driver yelled, "This is not ___ behavior!"

a. primary b. legible c. alert d. appropriate

________ 2. English police are still ___ by the 1934 murder of a woman whose body parts were found in two wooden trunks. Not only is the crime unsolved; the name of the victim is still unknown.

a. bewildered b. obtained c. communicated d. revived

________ 3. Letters are still my favorite way to ___ with faraway friends and family.

a. fulfill b. seize c. communicate d. humiliate

________ 4. Mel kept his wife from knowing he had lost his job. He ___ her by leaving the house each morning as if he were going to work.

a. alerted b. fulfilled c. devoted d. deceived

________ 5. To show how ___ he was about wanting the job, Ira offered to work for no pay for a week.

a. timid b. primary c. hostile d. earnest

________ 6. A raised voice can mean one of several ___: anger, excitement, happiness, or surprise.

a. emotions b. preys c. burdens d. fictions

________ 7. It is hard for a right-handed person to write a ___ message using his or her left hand.

a. severe b. timid c. legible d. primary

________ 8. Unsatisfied with the way the local police were handling the murder case, the victim's family hired a detective to ___ it.

a. revive b. influence c. investigate d. exclude

________ 9. When my daughter said, "There is a monster under my bed," her story was not purely ___: there was a large spider hiding there.

a. fiction b. burden c. function d. excerpt

________ 10. I realized my ___ that all dog lovers were nice people was wrong when I met Doreen. She is very nice to dogs, but nasty to human beings.

a. prey b. theme c. function d. theory

________ 11. To increase her feeling of ___ when she walks home from the bus stop at night, Elena learned karate.

a. security b. circumstances c. burden d. impulse

(Continues on next page)

_______________ 12. It's ___ that your shoes are muddy — you're leaving dirty footprints on the carpet.

a. extravagant b. hostile c. apparent d. timid

_______________ 13. Although many of our neighbors have gardens, Mr. Soo's is really ___. He grows thirty-pound watermelons, tomatoes as big as softballs, and flowers as beautiful as anything in a flower shop.

a. hostile b. extraordinary c. misleading d. monotonous

PART B

Write **C** if the italicized word is used **correctly**. Write **I** if the word is used **incorrectly**.

____ 14. Because my sister skipped assignments and classes, it's hard for me to *sympathize* with her disappointment over failing algebra.

____ 15. My boss *fulfilled* my request for a day off, saying, "No, you've had too much time off already."

____ 16. Someday I'd like to replace my old-fashioned camera with a new *automatic* one that does everything by itself, even advancing the film.

____ 17. Fay is so *extravagant* that she purposely finds fault with waiters so that she can refuse to leave them a tip.

____ 18. Some parents worry that "Barbie dolls," with their impossibly long legs and tiny waists, can *influence* little girls, making them feel bad about their own bodies.

____ 19. Dan is worried about his math test because he knows it is *crucial* to his grade for the course.

____ 20. It is more *economical* to buy a six-pack of sodas for $1.99 than to buy six single sodas at 50 cents each.

____ 21. Since he was a little boy, Jon has *devoted* himself to becoming a pilot. He reads constantly about airplanes and flying and saves all his money for flying lessons.

____ 22. I feel so tired that instead of getting up this morning, I would love to just *transfer* in bed.

____ 23. Having our grandfather live with us was not a *burden*. Not only was he easy to live with, but he was very helpful around the house.

____ 24. I was so excited when my parents *humiliated* me with a plane ticket to visit my sister in England.

____ 25. As Dan studied for his test, his family helped *distract* him by turning off the TV and keeping the house quiet and peaceful.

Score (Number correct) ________ × 4 = ________%

Enter your score above and in the vocabulary performance chart on the inside back cover of the book.

UNIT FOUR: Test 2

PART A

Complete each item with a word from the box. Use each word once.

a. **abandon**	b. **circumstances**	c. **disregard**	d. **function**	e. **hinder**
f. **hostile**	g. **misleading**	h. **monotonous**	i. **perceive**	j. **prey**
k. **revive**	l. **seize**	m. **severe**		

________________ 1. It is the ___ of advertising to persuade you that you will be happier and better off if only you will buy a certain product.

________________ 2. Very young cats who have kittens will often ___ the babies instead of taking care of them.

________________ 3. When children get chicken pox, the disease is just a minor problem, but for adults, chicken pox can be a ___ illness.

________________ 4. Paula's parents live in unusual ___; although they have been divorced for years, they continue to live in separate parts of the same house.

________________ 5. It is ___ that we have a Morrisville address, since we actually live much closer to the town of Hendrix.

________________ 6. I prefer a job that takes a lot of effort to one that is easy but ___, with little or no change from hour to hour and day to day.

________________ 7. Foolishly, Randy ___ed the fact that he is allergic to seafood, ate a lobster, and ended up in the hospital.

________________ 8. Before I could take a bite of my grilled cheese sandwich, a hungry dog ___d it, pulling it out of my hand and gulping it down.

________________ 9. Luis does not let his lack of a car ___ him from getting to work; he rides his bicycle.

________________ 10. Early in the season, the baseball team's chance of getting to the World Series was not good. But then the team ___d its hopes by winning eight games in a row.

________________ 11. Long before I entered the house, I could ___ that Mom was making her famous spaghetti sauce. Its wonderful smell was the clue.

________________ 12. To catch its ___, the anteater sticks its tongue into an anthill.

________________ 13. Never run up to pet a dog you don't know. Move toward it slowly until you are sure it is not ___.

(Continues on next page)

PART B

Write **C** if the italicized word is used **correctly**. Write **I** if the word is used **incorrectly**.

_____14. I will let my cousin move into my apartment only if he *assures* me it will be for no more than a week.

_____15. Mr. Henderson does everything according to *impulse*. For example, when he decided to buy a car, he spent months comparing models and prices, reading articles in car magazines, and visiting car dealers.

_____16. Anitra is the most *idle* one in her family — she does all of the cooking and cleaning by herself.

_____17. Every group of friends seems to have one especially *timid* member who bosses the others around.

_____18. In 1959, one film — *Ben Hur* — *dominated* the Academy Awards, winning 11 Oscars.

_____19. The videotapes of the robbery showed that as it was going on, the night watchman was *alert* and snoring in his office.

_____20. Although Marla was abused as a child, she has *overcome* that terrible experience and is a kind, loving parent herself.

_____21. The sweater has bits of blue and green in it, but its *primary* color is red.

_____22. Have you ever really had to write a paper on the *theme* "How I Spent My Summer Vacation"?

_____23. Robert Frost's "Mending Wall" is a well-known poem whose *excerpt* warns us not to shut ourselves off from other people.

_____24. "No bacon for me, thank you," said Ahmed. "We Muslims *exclude* pork from our diet."

_____25. Scientists are working on a vaccine that will help people *obtain* the virus that causes AIDS.

Score (Number correct) _______ × 4 = _______%

Enter your score above and in the vocabulary performance chart on the inside back cover of the book.

UNIT FOUR: Test 3

PART A: Synonyms

In the space provided, write the letter of the choice that is most nearly the **same** in meaning as the **boldfaced** word.

_____ 1. **assure** a) argue with b) promise c) run from d) reach out to

_____ 2. **automatic** a) operating by itself b) money-saving c) clear d) ashamed

_____ 3. **bewilder** a) discontinue b) hide c) confuse d) examine

_____ 4. **circumstances** a) feelings b) situation c) hardships d) enemies

_____ 5. **communicate** a) take seriously b) make strong c) pay for d) make known

_____ 6. **devote** a) slow down b) turn away c) get rid of d) give oneself

_____ 7. **distract** a) pull attention away b) point toward c) get d) make better

_____ 8. **emotion** a) movement b) victim c) hardship d) feeling

_____ 9. **excerpt** a) sudden decision b) effect c) part of a work d) whole

_____ 10. **fulfill** a) hurry b) embarrass c) search for d) carry out

_____ 11. **function** a) knowledge b) hardship c) topic d) use

_____ 12. **humiliate** a) shame b) give energy to c) send d) calm

_____ 13. **impulse** a) position b) sudden desire c) heartbeat d) difficulty

_____ 14. **influence** a) say b) activity c) get d) have an effect on

_____ 15. **investigate** a) examine b) ignore c) punish d) lose

_____ 16. **misleading** a) proper b) aware c) giving the wrong idea d) unfriendly

_____ 17. **obtain** a) protect b) explore c) move d) get

_____ 18. **perceive** a) notice b) grab c) ignore d) lie to

_____ 19. **prey** a) hardship b) subject c) victim d) struggle

_____ 20. **primary** a) small b) main c) moving by itself d) aware

_____ 21. **seize** a) grab b) tell c) puzzle d) convince

_____ 22. **sympathize** a) ignore b) slow down c) leave out d) feel pity

_____ 23. **theme** a) difficulty b) condition c) main topic d) hardship

_____ 24. **theory** a) explanation b) effect c) activity d) choice

_____ 25. **transfer** a) puzzle b) study closely c) win d) move

(Continues on next page)

PART B: Antonyms

In the space provided, write the letter of the choice that is most nearly **opposite** in meaning to the **boldfaced** word.

_____26. **abandon** a) make clear b) surprise c) lose d) continue

_____27. **alert** a) patient b) sleepy c) serious d) special

_____28. **apparent** a) not proper b) hidden c) difficult d) unfriendly

_____29. **appropriate** a) least important b) friendly c) exact d) not proper

_____30. **burden** a) truth b) something easy to handle c) something usual d) thought

_____31. **crucial** a) not real b) not important c) not clear d) not wanted

_____32. **deceive** a) tire b) give away c) tell the truth to d) let go of

_____33. **disregard** a) know b) throw away c) make fun of d) pay attention to

_____34. **dominate** a) accept as true b) lie to c) argue with d) have a low position

_____35. **earnest** a) weak b) dishonest c) not fearful d) not important

_____36. **economical** a) exciting b) expected c) expert d) expensive

_____37. **exclude** a) set free b) support c) lose to d) include

_____38. **extraordinary** a) friendly b) careless c) usual d) important

_____39. **extravagant** a) troubled b) money-saving c) confident d) not serious

_____40. **fiction** a) action b) idea c) subject d) truth

_____41. **hinder** a) give away b) help c) change d) lose

_____42. **hostile** a) not sincere b) brave c) not boring d) friendly

_____43. **idle** a) busy b) valuable c) not proper d) brave

_____44. **legible** a) not boring b) unreadable c) untruthful d) not easy

_____45. **monotonous** a) unusual b) interesting c) true d) easy to understand

_____46. **overcome** a) continue b) lose to c) have faith in d) find fault with

_____47. **revive** a) make clear b) pay attention c) listen carefully d) make weak

_____48. **security** a) relief b) activity c) anger d) danger

_____49. **severe** a) sad b) fast c) new d) mild

_____50. **timid** a) unclear b) brave c) important d) fast

Score (Number correct) ________ × 2 = ________%

Enter your score above and in the vocabulary performance chart on the inside back cover of the book.

Unit Five

Chapter 21

conflict	stress
possess	sufficient
procedure	unanimous
renew	vary
resources	vicinity

Chapter 22

abolish	nevertheless
corrupt	precise
decay	reform
expand	tendency
flexible	vast

Chapter 23

assert	precaution
clarify	preconception
evade	resemble
extend	rigid
negligent	vertical

Chapter 24

anxious	illustrate
comprehend	impression
convince	inferior
dramatic	overwhelm
frank	thorough

Chapter 25

acquire	precede
commitment	resent
formal	solemn
fragment	spite
fundamental	symbolize

Unit Five: *Pretest*

In the space provided, write the letter of the choice that is closest in meaning to the **boldfaced** word.

____ 1. **conflict** a) period of time b) point of view c) lesson d) disagreement

____ 2. **possess** a) run after b) adjust c) leave unchanged d) own

____ 3. **procedure** a) method b) opinion c) public d) piece of property

____ 4. **renew** a) create b) make active again c) force one's will upon d) attempt

____ 5. **resources** a) supplies b) inventions c) responses d) agreements

____ 6. **stress** a) tension b) relaxation c) enjoyment d) excitement

____ 7. **sufficient** a) less than is needed b) humorous c) empty d) enough

____ 8. **unanimous** a) poorly thought out b) one-sided c) based on complete agreement d) mistaken

____ 9. **vary** a) change b) insist c) remain the same d) reduce in size

____ 10. **vicinity** a) heated argument b) area around a place c) written pamphlet d) type of lamp

____ 11. **abolish** a) make smooth b) argue c) get rid of d) pay for

____ 12. **corrupt** a) sudden b) not honest c) careful d) not friendly

____ 13. **decay** a) break down b) make a decision c) rebuild d) make clear

____ 14. **expand** a) spend b) shrink c) punish d) grow

____ 15. **flexible** a) able to speak b) able to slow down c) able to bend d) able to walk

____ 16. **nevertheless** a) because b) afterward c) always d) even so

____ 17. **precise** a) exact b) busy c) large d) neglectful

____ 18. **reform** a) annoy b) make clear c) make better d) confuse

____ 19. **tendency** a) group of ten b) leaning toward c) working hard d) setting a limit

____ 20. **vast** a) well known b) silly c) very large d) frightening

____ 21. **assert** a) state as true b) tell a lie c) put limits on d) get ready for

____ 22. **clarify** a) doubt b) explain c) create d) stop

____ 23. **evade** a) make small b) break down c) get away from d) make longer

____ 24. **extend** a) make longer b) make up c) make ready d) make small

____ 25. **negligent** a) watchful b) tired c) not bending d) careless

(Continues on next page)

____ 26. **precaution** a) cure b) problem c) something done to fix a problem d) something done beforehand

____ 27. **preconception** a) judgment made in advance b) decision c) problem d) area nearby

____ 28. **resemble** a) see again b) look like c) worry about d) be angry with

____ 29. **rigid** a) like new b) not bending c) not friendly d) hard to see

____ 30. **vertical** a) side to side b) up and down c) all around d) truthful

____ 31. **anxious** a) sleepy b) sick c) busy d) worried

____ 32. **comprehend** a) scorn b) repeat c) protect d) understand

____ 33. **convince** a) cause to believe b) refuse to accept c) disregard d) clean up

____ 34. **dramatic** a) impressive b) hard to notice c) odd d) boring

____ 35. **frank** a) untruthful b) youthful c) honest d) painful

____ 36. **illustrate** a) give an example b) destroy c) repair d) send off

____ 37. **impression** a) lie b) pattern c) opinion d) center (of something)

____ 38. **inferior** a) highly valued b) poor in quality c) less expensive d) unbreakable

____ 39. **overwhelm** a) dissolve b) understand c) make helpless d) make whole

____ 40. **thorough** a) carefully done b) wasted c) forgotten d) well-paying

____ 41. **acquire** a) appreciate b) go before c) need d) get

____ 42. **commitment** a) promise b) symbol c) talk d) group of people

____ 43. **formal** a) proper b) previous c) later d) complete

____ 44. **fragment** a) injury b) copy c) true statement d) small part

____ 45. **fundamental** a) basic b) broken c) enjoyable d) thoughtful

____ 46. **precede** a) come after b) interrupt c) be a part of d) go before

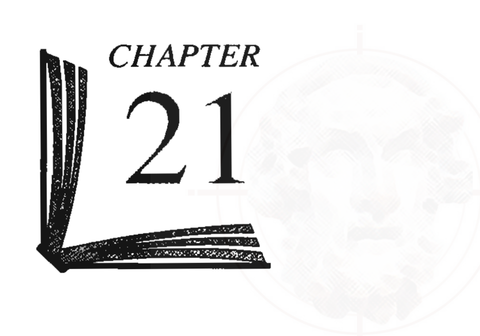
____ 47. **resent** a) stand for b) feel angry at c) give away d) make up with

____ 48. **solemn** a) lazy b) basic c) serious d) quiet

____ 49. **spite** a) desire to hurt b) desire to please c) long speech d) sense of humor

____ 50. **symbolize** a) look at b) point to c) talk to d) stand for

SCORE: (Number correct) ________ × 2 = ________ %





conflict	**stress**
possess	**sufficient**
procedure	**unanimous**
renew	**vary**
resources	**vicinity**

Ten Words in Context

In the space provided, write the letter of the meaning closest to that of each **boldfaced** word. Use the context of the sentences to help you figure out each word's meaning.

1 **conflict**
/ˈkɒnflɪkt/
– *noun*

- When the **conflict** between the two diners became noisy, the restaurant manager asked them to settle their quarrel outside.
- Marsha's children often have a **conflict** about whose turn it is to put out the trash.

___ *Conflict* means a. fight. b. joke. c. duty.

2 **possess**
/pəˈzes/
– *verb*

- I can't understand the desire to **possess** very expensive cars and jewelry. If I had more money, I'd spend it on travel.
- People who spend time with young children need to **possess** plenty of patience.

___ *Possess* means a. to have. b. to know. c. to see.

3 **procedure**
/prəˈsiːdʒə(r)/
– *noun*

- What **procedure** should I follow to become a citizen?
- Even kindergarten students can learn the **procedure** for reporting an emergency: Dial 110, give your name and address, and describe the problem.

___ *Procedure* means a. answer. b. steps. c. support.

4 **renew**
/rɪˈnjuː/
– *verb*

- After helping to pay for their children's education, many parents barely have time to **renew** their savings in time for retirement.
- We need a good rain to **renew** the supply of water throughout this area. In the meantime, people are being asked not to water their lawns.

___ *Renew* means a. to change. b. to upset. c. to build up again.

5 **resources**
/rɪˈsɔːsɪz/
– *noun*

- West Virginia's natural **resources** include coal and timber.
- A country's **resources** include its workers — the people who help to keep the economy strong.

___ *Resources* means a. plans. b. expenses. c. wealth.

6 **stress**
/stres/
– *noun*

- My doctor said my headaches were caused by **stress**. He suggested that I think of ways to reduce the tension in my life.
- Troy and Angie are experiencing a lot of **stress**. Angie's mother is very sick, Troy just lost his job, and they just learned that Angie is going to have twins.

___ *Stress* means a. relief. b. problems. c. details.

7 **sufficient**
/səˈfɪʃənt/
– *adjective*

- The farmers were thankful that there was **sufficient** rain to save their crops.
- Brian's father told him, "When you bring the car home, make sure it has **sufficient** gas to get me to work tomorrow."

___ *Sufficient* means a. less. b. different. c. enough.

8 **unanimous**
/juːˈnænɪməs/
– *adjective*

- The vote electing me president of the PTA was **unanimous**. In fact, there was no other candidate to vote for.
- The jury's decision was **unanimous**. Every juror believed that the woman on trial had robbed the beauty parlor after getting her hair cut.

___ *Unanimous* means a. showing full agreement. b. uncertain. c. hard to understand.

9 **vary**
/ˈveərɪ/
– *verb*

- There are often great changes in weather along the coast. In one day, the temperature can **vary** by as much as forty degrees.
- Joan's lunches never **vary**. Every day, she eats a peanut butter and celery sandwich, pretzels, and a banana.

___ *Vary* means a. to begin. b. to change. c. to disappear.

10 **vicinity**
/vɪˈsɪnətɪ/
– *noun*

- In the **vicinity** of the elementary school, the speed limit is fifteen miles an hour.
- The Johnsons decided not to buy the house they liked when they learned that there was a nuclear power plant in the **vicinity**.

___ *Vicinity* means a. yard. b. building. c. neighborhood.

Matching Words with Definitions

Following are definitions of the ten words. **Print** each word next to its definition. If you look closely at each word in context, you will be able to figure out its meaning.

1. ________________ Whatever makes up the present and future wealth of a country, state, etc., including natural supplies and labor force
2. ________________ To fill up again; replace
3. ________________ The area near or around a place
4. ________________ A quarrel or fight; disagreement
5. ________________ Showing full agreement
6. ________________ Mental or emotional tension; strain
7. ________________ To become different or to be different; change
8. ________________ As much as is needed
9. ________________ To own; have
10. ________________ Method; the way in which something is done

CAUTION: Do not go any further until you are sure the above answers are correct. Then you can use the definitions to help you in the following practices. Your goal is eventually to know the words well enough so that you don't need to check the definitions at all.

Sentence Check 1

Using the answer line, complete each item below with the correct word from the box.

a. **conflict**	b. **possess**	c. **procedure**	d. **renew**	e. **resources**
f. **stress**	g. **sufficient**	h. **unanimous**	i. **vary**	j. **vicinity**

________ 1. A country's ___ include all of its minerals, such as coal, gold, and silver.

________ 2. If there is no disagreement among jurors, we say that their decision is ___.

________ 3. Whether two people or groups are fighting with words or weapons, we can say they are having a ___.

________ 4. If someone lives in the ___ of your home, you would call that person a neighbor.

________ 5. If you are always patient, we can say that you ___ lots of patience.

________ 6. Roses ___ greatly in color, size, and shape.

________ 7. A ___ is a process that often involves a series of steps.

________ 8. If you say you have ___ time for an assignment, that means you have enough time to do it in.

________ 9. To ___ my supply of clean towels, I'll have to do my laundry tonight.

________ 10. Anything that puts pressure on our emotions, bodies, or minds can be called ___.

Sentence Check 2

Using the answer lines, complete each item below with **two** words from the box.

____
________ 1–2. The ongoing ___ between the Millers and Smiths — an argument over the Smiths' noisy parties— has caused the Millers so much ___ that they are thinking of moving.

____
________ 3–4. My father feels lucky that there is a surgeon in our ___ who has developed a special ___ for doing the type of operation that he needs.

____
________ 5–6. For certain trials, a majority vote among the jurors is not ___. Instead, the vote must be ___.

____
________ 7–8. According to one fairy tale, a king ___es a magic box full of gold coins; whenever the box becomes empty, it ___s its supply of coins.

____
________ 9–10. The natural ___ of the United States ___ depending upon the part of the country. For example, the Midwest is rich in farmland, and the Northeast has more coal.

➣ *Related Words*

Once you learn a new word, you can more easily understand many related words. Below are ten words related to the core words of this chapter. Use their definitions to help you write in the word that best completes each item.

a. **distress**, *noun*	Mental or physical suffering
b. **insufficient**, *adjective*	Not enough
c. **possession**, *noun*	Something that is owned
d. **stressful**, *adjective*	Producing tension
e. **variation**, *noun*	A change from what is usual

________ 1. Even though a wedding is a happy event, it is also a ___ one for the people getting married and their families. For instance, it is common for families to argue about who gets invited and who does not.

________ 2. One of the museum's most valuable ___s is a five-thousand-year-old Chinese vase. Such vases are quite scarce°; there may be fewer than a dozen in the entire world.

________ 3. The trip to the shore was canceled when an ___ number of people signed up to go.

________ 4. For dinner, we had a ___ on the usual pork chops — it was Spicy Hawaiian Pork with Pineapple.

________ 5. When the movers dropped a box marked "Fragile," a look of ___ crossed Mrs. Henderson's face. She knew the accident had not been intentional°, but inside the box was a valuable statue which she had obtained° on a trip to Mexico.

f. **proceed**, *verb*	To go ahead
g. **renewable**, *adjective*	Always able to be supplied again
h. **suffice**, *verb*	To be enough
i. **unvarying**, *adjective*	Unchanging
j. **variety**, *noun*	A number of different things; mixture

________ 6. Will five dollars ___ to pay for the taxi?

________ 7. Turn left at Maple Avenue and ___ three blocks south.

________ 8. Solar energy is ___; that is, we can always get more of it.

________ 9. The local college offers a ___ of adult classes, including yoga, oil painting, self-defense, and Chinese cooking.

________ 10. On the long car trip, the family drove past many miles of corn fields, and the children grew tired of the ___ view. That's when I pulled out the games I had brought along to help the children overcome° boredom.

➣ Word Parts

A. The suffix *-ful* mean "producing ___" or "full of ___."

Examples: *stress* — tension / *stressful* — producing tension; *joy* — great happiness / *joyful* — full of great happiness

On each answer line, write the word from the box that means the same as the *italicized* words.

a. **beautiful**	b. **playful**	c. **stressful**
d. **thankful**	e. **wasteful**	

________ 1. "All you can eat" restaurants encourage people to be *producing waste*, piling far more food on their plates than they really want or need.

________ 2. Although the outside of an oyster shell is rather ugly, the inside is *full of beauty*, with its pale milky rainbow of colors.

________ 3. When my car broke down on a dark road far from my home, I was *full of thanks* that a police officer quickly arrived and offered me a ride to town.

________ 4. Most people find it *producing stress* to have to speak in front of a large group.

________ 5. Our boss may seem overly serious, but when she's not busy, she can be quite *full of play*, laughing and telling jokes.

B. The prefix *com-* or *con-* means "with" or "together."

Examples: *conflict* — a quarrel with someone; *communicate*° — to exchange information together

On each answer line, write the word from the box that best completes the item.

f. **communicate°**	g. **complicate°**	h. **conflict**
i. **confront°**	j. **contrast°**	

________ 6. Thelma had a ___ with her neighbors over their dogs' getting into her garbage cans.

________ 7. The more people you invite, the more you will ___ our job of preparing for the party.

________ 8. There's a big ___ between the two Williams brothers. One is very outgoing and friendly, and the other is quite shy.

________ 9. When the Carveys didn't pay their rent for the third month in a row, the landlord actually came to their door to ___ them.

________ 10. In the 1800s, it must have been very difficult to ___ with people who lived far away. Today we are all lucky to have phones and good mail service.

➣ *Final Check*

Read the passages carefully. Then fill in each blank with the word that best fits the context.

A. Traveling with Children

a. **conflict**	b. **stress**	c. **unanimous**
d. **vary**	e. **vicinity**	

Whether I'm driving in the (1)____________________ of home or farther away, the trip seems to last longer if my kids are in the car. The minute we're on the road, the baby begins to cry and the older children start a major (2)____________________. These fights (3)____________________ from time to time, but they often have something to do with one of four primary° complaints:

1. One kid is in the front seat when it's another kid's turn.
2. Someone who had a window seat last time got one again.
3. One of the gang hates the music that another has turned on. (No single radio station has won the (4)____________________ approval of the children.)
4. One child feels another "is looking at me funny."

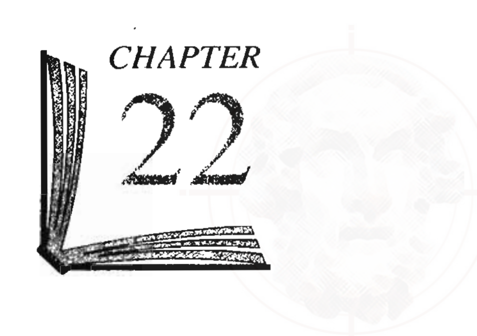
Now that I think about it, maybe I can preserve° the peace and lower the level of (5)____________________ in my life by making the kids take a bus!

B. Saving Earth's Natural Supplies

f. **possess**	g. **procedure**	h. **renew**
i. **resources**	j. **sufficient**	

Once some of Earth's valuable (6)______________________ are used up, it will be impossible to (7)______________________ them. For example, coal will someday be used up and gone forever.

We do, however, (8)______________________ other important supplies that can be used over and over. Paper, metals, plastics and glass can be turned into new products again and again by means of recycling. If we don't recycle, who knows what severe° shortages and garbage problems will result? It's up to each of us to have (9)______________________ interest and foresight° to learn about the recycling methods in our communities and then to follow those (10)______________________s.





abolish	**nevertheless**
corrupt	**precise**
decay	**reform**
expand	**tendency**
flexible	**vast**

Ten Words in Context

In the space provided, write the letter of the meaning closest to that of each **boldfaced** word. Use the context of the sentences to help you figure out each word's meaning.

1 **abolish** /ə'bɒlɪʃ/ – *verb*

- With our advanced farming methods, why can't we **abolish** hunger?
- One way for a school district to save money is to **abolish** summer vacation and hold classes all year round.

___ *Abolish* means a. to make longer. b. to get rid of. c. to pay for.

2 **corrupt** /kə'rʌpt/ – *adjective*

- A **corrupt** police officer went to prison for selling the drugs he took in a raid.
- The country was run by a **corrupt** ruler who robbed the rich and poor alike.

___ *Corrupt* means a. not honest. b. respected. c. poor.

3 **decay** /dɪ'keɪ/ – *verb*

- Teeth that are brushed and flossed regularly are not likely to **decay**.
- Leaves fall from the trees, **decay**, and become part of the forest floor.

___ *Decay* means a. to increase. b. to bend. c. to rot.

4 **expand** /ɪk'spænd/ – *verb*

- The grocery is buying the shop next door so that it can **expand** enough to double its space.
- During a heavy rain, that little creek **expands** into a fast-moving river.

___ *Expand* means a. to bend. b. to break down. c. to grow.

5 **flexible** /'fleksəbl/ – *adjective*

- The lamp has a **flexible** neck that can be bent in any direction you need light.
- Lily is the kind of child who is upset at any change of plan, while Ashley is more **flexible** and able to enjoy doing something unexpected.

___ *Flexible* means a. able to bend or change. b. long or tall. c. useless.

6 **nevertheless** /ˌnevəðə'les/ – *adverb*

- Too much sun can cause skin cancer; **nevertheless**, many people want a deep suntan.
- The doll is old and tattered, but the little boy loves it **nevertheless**.

___ *Nevertheless* means a. rarely. b. because of that. c. even with that.

7 precise
/prɪˈsaɪs/
– adjective

- In baking, it is important to be **precise** when measuring ingredients.
- We found the house easily, thanks to our host's **precise** directions.

___ *Precise* means a. exact. b. busy. c. strong.

8 reform
/rɪˈfɔːm/
– verb

- Does serving time in prison **reform** people or only keep them off the streets?
- Training classes can **reform** dogs so that they don't jump on people and pull on their leashes.

___ *Reform* means a. to annoy. b. to make better. c. to confuse.

9 tendency
/ˈtendənsɪ/
– noun

- Fishermen have a **tendency** to tell big stories about the fish they almost caught.
- I have a bad **tendency** to put off doing work until the last minute.

___ *Tendency* means a. hard work. b. limit. c. habit.

10 vast
/vɑːst/
– adjective

- Lake Superior is so **vast** that you could easily mistake it for an ocean.
- The library has a **vast** collection of books for adults, but not so many for children.

___ *Vast* means a. well-known. b. gradual. c. very big.

Matching Words with Definitions

Following are definitions of the ten words. **Print** each word next to its definition. If you look closely at each word in context, you will be able to figure out its meaning.

1. ________________ To spread out; get larger
2. ________________ To gradually break down; rot
3. ________________ In spite of that; even so
4. ________________ Dishonest; crooked
5. ________________ To cause or persuade to behave better
6. ________________ To put an end to
7. ________________ Exact; correct; accurate
8. ________________ A leaning toward thinking or behaving in a certain way
9. ________________ Very large in size, amount, or area
10. ________________ Able to bend or be bent; able to change or be changed easily

CAUTION: Do not go any further until you are sure the above answers are correct. Then you can use the definitions to help you in the following practices. Your goal is eventually to know the words well enough so that you don't need to check the definitions at all.

➢ Sentence Check 1

Using the answer line, complete each item below with the correct word from the box.

a. abolish	b. corrupt	c. decay	d. expand	e. flexible
f. nevertheless	g. precise	h. reform	i. tendency	j. vast

________ 1. I don't know Hank's ___ age, but I guess he's in his mid-fifties.

________ 2. The sun is shining brightly; ___, it is quite chilly outside.

________ 3. The house is beginning to ___. Its windows are broken, and its paint is peeling off.

________ 4. The high school is going to ___ by adding more classrooms.

________ 5. My grandfather's hands are stiff when he wakes up, but later in the day they grow more ___.

________ 6. Scholars, writers, and researchers from all over the world visit the Library of Congress in Washington, D.C., to make use of its ___ collection of books and papers on every topic imaginable.

________ 7. Former employees told reporters about ___ practices in the supermarket, such as soaking spoiling hams in bleach to get rid of the bad smell.

________ 8. Eli used to answer the phone by yelling, "Who is this?" but a few lessons in phone manners ___ed him so that he now says "Hello?" politely.

________ 9. I have a ___ to talk loudly and quickly when I am nervous.

________ 10. The restaurant's owner decided to ___ the smoking section and make the entire restaurant smoke-free.

➢ Sentence Check 2

Using the answer lines, complete each item below with **two** words from the box.

____
________ 1–2. Elena has a ___ to be careless and messy at home; ___, she is always neat and careful at work.

____
________ 3–4. Many people feel that to ___ politicians and improve politics, it is necessary to ___ all gifts of money from groups that wish to influence° lawmakers.

____
________ 5–6. The housing project is so ___ that you can get lost walking around in it, and it's so poorly cared for that the buildings are starting to ___.

____
________ 7–8. The ___ crime boss wants his evil business to ___ even more; he plans to add gambling operations to his drug business.

____
________ 9–10. During their trip out West, Mom and Dad kept their plans very ___, so we didn't have a ___ idea of where they were at any time.

➢ *Related Words*

Once you learn a new word, you can more easily understand many related words. Below are ten words related to the core words of this chapter. Use their definitions to help you write in the word that best completes each item.

a. **abolition**, *noun*	Getting rid of something
b. **corruption**, *noun*	Making someone bad or dishonest
c. **expansion**, *noun*	Making something larger
d. **incorruptible**, *adjective*	Not able to be made dishonest
e. **reformatory**, *noun*	A school for young people who have broken the law

_______________ 1. The ___ of the car factory will create forty-five new jobs.

_______________ 2. The pastor of that church says that rock music is bad because it leads to the ___ of children.

_______________ 3. Because he was only 15 when he committed his crime, Brian was sent to a ___ rather than to the state prison.

_______________ 4. Everyone respects Judge Mayer because he is fair, honest, and ___.

_______________ 5. One of the most important effects of the Civil War was the ___ of slavery in the United States.

f. **expandable**, *adjective*	Able to become larger
g. **imprecise**, *adjective*	Not correct; not exact
h. **inflexible**, *noun*	Not willing to change
i. **precision**, *noun*	Exactness; correctness
j. **vastness**, *noun*	Great size

_______________ 6. My boss is ___; she wants to do things only one way — her way.

_______________ 7. During her pregnancy, Midori often wore sweatpants because of their stretchy, ___ waistline.

_______________ 8. The bench that I built rocked back and forth because I made ___ measurements before I began cutting.

_______________ 9. During operations, surgeons must make every movement with great ___, or they might do more harm than good. Nobody wants an awkward° surgeon.

_______________ 10. When I lie outside on a summer night, looking up at the sky filled with stars, I begin to think about the ___ of the universe and the smallness of our Earth. Is it possible that we are the sole° planet to have intelligent life?

➢ *Synonyms and Antonyms*

A. Synonyms. Write the letter of the word or phrase that most nearly means the **same** as each boldfaced word.

____ 1. **reform**

a. make better
b. make more difficult
c. make sure
d. get bigger

____ 2. **tendency**

a. thought
b. habit of acting in a certain way
c. fear
d. making something larger

____ 3. **decay**

a. build
b. continue
c. disappear
d. spoil

____ 4. **precise**

a. helpful
b. unclear
c. dishonest
d. exact

____ 5. **nevertheless**

a. because
b. perhaps
c. despite that
d. sometimes

B. Antonyms. Write the letter of the word or phrase that most nearly means the **opposite** of each boldfaced word.

____ 6. **corrupt**

a. small
b. helpless
c. honest
d. stiff

____ 7. **flexible**

a. stiff
b. small
c. gone
d. not correct

____ 8. **vast**

a. many
b. broken
c. incorrect
d. tiny

____ 9. **expand**

a. grow stronger
b. get smaller
c. break
d. build

____ 10. **abolish**

a. end
b. become used to
c. like
d. create

➣ *Final Check*

Read the passages carefully. Then fill in each blank with the word that best fits the context.

A. More Fat, Anyone?

a. **decay**	b. **expand**	c. **nevertheless**
d. **precise**	e. **vast**	

We know that fatty and sugary foods are bad for us. (1)____________________, we love to eat them. Demand for food with (2)____________________ amounts of fat and sugar is high.

To meet the demand for fat, many fast-food giants offer more and bigger high-fat menu items. Pizza Hut sells its Triple Decker Pizza, a health nightmare with as much fat as a stick and a half of butter! McDonald's offers a super-fat triple cheeseburger. And Taco Bell sells a variety° of fatty bacon products. To make matters worse, the fast-food chains offer sugar-filled ice cream, shakes, soda, pies, and cookies that make us fatter and cause our teeth to (3)____________________. Although fat and sugar are not wholesome° for the customer, they are certainly good for the financial health of the fast-food chains.

Why do we disregard° what science teaches us about a good diet? Researchers cannot explain the (4)____________________ reasons why we ignore what we know about healthy eating, but one thing is certain. As long as our appetite for fat and sugar continues to increase, our waistlines will continue to (5)____________________.

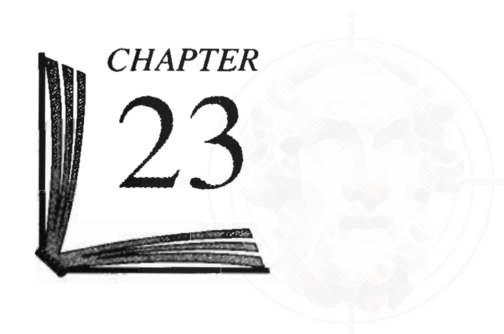
B. Is Prison Effective?

f. **abolish**	g. **corrupt**	h. **flexible**
i. **reform**	j. **tendency**	

There's a lot of disagreement about how to (6)____________________ criminals and make them good citizens. Today, most of them are sent to prison. But many people believe that serving time in prison does not really make a person less likely to commit another crime. They point out that in prison, a person may spend months or years in the company of more hardened criminals. Will a prisoner in such company come out of jail with the (7)____________________ to be honest? Not likely, they say — instead, the prisoner will probably learn only how to be more (8)____________________.

In addition, many people want to (9)____________________ the death penalty. They believe it is just as wrong to kill a killer as it was for him or her to commit murder in the first place.

Even if you agree with these points, the question remains of how to deal with people who harm others. Some people want prison changed from a place where people are just locked up to a place where prisoners can obtain° an education, job training, and counseling. They want to see the system become (10)____________________ enough to adjust to a prisoner's needs, rather than treat everyone the same. They want to see prisons influence° prisoners in positive ways.




CHAPTER 23

assert	**precaution**
clarify	**preconception**
evade	**resemble**
extend	**rigid**
negligent	**vertical**

Ten Words in Context

In the space provided, write the letter of the meaning closest to that of each **boldfaced** word. Use the context of the sentences to help you figure out each word's meaning.

1 assert /əˈsɜːt/ – *verb*

- The mayor **asserted** in court that he never took bribes, but the jury did not believe him.
- Every once in a while, the newspapers sold in supermarkets **assert** that Elvis Presley is alive and hiding somewhere.

___ *Assert* means a. to doubt. b. to fear. c. to state strongly.

2 clarify /ˈklærɪfaɪ/ – *verb*

- Mr. Patel is a great math teacher. He can **clarify** even the hardest problems so that everyone can understand.
- I didn't understand my health insurance plan, so I asked someone at the insurance company to **clarify** it for me.

___ *Clarify* means a. to explain. b. to create. c. to stop.

3 evade /ɪˈveɪd/ – *verb*

- Our dog will do anything to **evade** a bath. Once we get him near the tub, we have to shut the bathroom door, or he will escape.
- In my favorite cops-and-robbers movie, the robbers tried to **evade** the police by leaving through a hole in the roof. However, their plan failed — the police were waiting on the roof!

___ *Evade* means a. to break down. b. to get away from. c. to find.

4 extend /ɪkˈstend/ – *verb*

- We had so much fun camping that we **extended** our vacation one more day.
- "Because many students are having trouble finishing this project on time," said the instructor, "I will **extend** the deadline by one more week."

___ *Extend* means a. to make longer or later. b. to make clear. c. to escape.

5 negligent /ˈneglɪdʒənt/ – *adjective*

- Our neighbor is **negligent** with her dog — she lets it run loose and dig in other people's yards.
- I was **negligent** in caring for my new plant, and it died.

___ *Negligent* means a. friendly. b. paying too little attention. c. surprised.

6 precaution /prɪˈkɔːʃən/ – *noun*

- We took the **precaution** of having the car tuned up before we began our long trip.
- As you walk in the woods, wear long pants as a **precaution** against poison ivy.

___ *Precaution* means a. cure for a problem. b. something stated. c. step taken to be safe.

7 preconception /ˌpriːkənˈsepʃən/ – *noun*

- From her voice on the phone, I had a **preconception** of my brother's girlfriend as being rather unfriendly.
- Our **preconception** that the party would be boring was completely wrong. Once we got there, we had a great time.

___ *Preconception* means a. wish. b. judgment made without experience. c. statement of fact.

8 resemble /rɪˈzembl/ – *verb*

- A certain worthless mineral is known as "fool's gold" because it **resembles** real gold. Both minerals are shiny yellow.
- Eating wild mushrooms can be dangerous because a poisonous mushroom sometimes **resembles** one that is safe.

___ *Resemble* means a. to be better than. b. to look the same as. c. to be easier to find than.

9 rigid /ˈrɪdʒɪd/ – *adjective*

- Modeling clay is **rigid** when it is cold, but once it warms in your hands it becomes softer and easier to work with.
- The guards outside the palace stood stiffly — they looked as **rigid** as poles.

___ *Rigid* means a. not heavy. b. hard to beat. c. not bending.

10 vertical /ˈvɜːtɪkəl/ – *adjective*

- Clothes with **vertical** stripes generally make the wearer look taller and thinner.
- The dark **vertical** lines of the telephone poles looked striking against the background of the snowy field.

___ *Vertical* means a. very clear. b. curving. c. up-and-down.

Matching Words with Definitions

Following are definitions of the ten words. **Print** each word next to its definition. If you look closely at each word in context, you will be able to figure out its meaning.

1. ______________ An opinion formed before having enough information or experience
2. ______________ To look like or be similar to; be like
3. ______________ To make clear or easy to understand
4. ______________ Something done in advance to avoid a problem
5. ______________ Careless
6. ______________ To state positively, often without proof
7. ______________ To escape or avoid through clever action
8. ______________ In a straight up-and-down line; upright
9. ______________ Stiff; not bending
10. ______________ To make longer in time or later in time

CAUTION: Do not go any further until you are sure the above answers are correct. Then you can use the definitions to help you in the following practices. Your goal is eventually to know the words well enough so that you don't need to check the definitions at all.

➣ *Sentence Check 1*

Using the answer line, complete each item below with the correct word from the box.

a. **assert**	b. **clarify**	c. **evade**	d. **extend**	e. **negligent**
f. **precaution**	g. **preconception**	h. **resemble**	i. **rigid**	j. **vertical**

______________ 1. A good math teacher can ___ a difficult problem.

______________ 2. The people who want to build the mall ___ that it will mean more business for local stores, but the local stores owners do not believe them.

______________ 3. The children found a ___ board to use as a bridge over the creek.

______________ 4. Eli was a poor worker — he ___d responsibility whenever possible.

______________ 5. The instructor ___ed the test so everyone had time to finish.

______________ 6. Before tasting spinach, many kids have the ___ they will not like it.

______________ 7. Expensive silk roses ___ real roses.

______________ 8. It was ___ of you to play soccer in the house — you must have known you could break something.

______________ 9. Remember to put on sunblock lotion as a ___ against sunburn.

______________ 10. As we got closer to New York City, we saw the ___ shape of the tall Empire State Building against the bright summer sky.

➣ *Sentence Check 2*

Using the answer lines, complete each item below with **two** words from the box.

____
______________ 1–2. It was ___ of the town to open a swimming pool without taking the ___ of hiring a lifeguard first.

____
______________ 3–4. Because Krista ___s her sister physically, I had the ___ that she would have a similar personality, but the two girls are actually very different.

____
______________ 5–6. A reporter said the mayor's views on taxes were unclear, and he asked the mayor to ___ her ideas. However, the Mayor ___d the question by saying, "Who can think about taxes when our basketball team is about to win the state championship?"

____
______________ 7–8. The new advertisements for the motor oil ___ that using the oil is guaranteed to ___ the life of your car.

____
______________ 9–10. To make a playhouse, Mac began with four ___ pieces of wood. He stuck one end of each deep in the ground, so that each piece of wood was in a ___ position.

➢ *Related Words*

Once you learn a new word, you can more easily understand many related words. Below are ten words related to the core words of this chapter. Use their definitions to help you write in the word that best completes each item.

a. **clarification**, *noun*	Explanation
b. **conception**, *noun*	An idea or thought
c. **extension**, *noun*	An increase in time
d. **negligence**, *noun*	Carelessness
e. **rigidity**, *noun*	Stiffness; inability or unwillingness to change

________________ 1. The children were scolded for their ___ in leaving the cover off the ant farm and letting all the ants escape.

________________ 2. My boss gave me a two-day ___ to my vacation so that I can go on a ten-day trip with my family.

________________ 3. Many students had trouble understanding the science assignment, so the instructor took some class time for a ___.

________________ 4. A young child's ___ of heaven is a place where angels live on clouds.

________________ 5. I found Emmet hard to live with because of his ___. He found it almost impossible to accept change and other people's ways of doing things.

f. **assertion**, *noun*	A statement made positively but without proof
g. **assertive**, *adjective*	Able to stand up for oneself and say what one thinks or wants
h. **clarity**, *noun*	Clearness of thought and choice of words
i. **evasion**, *noun*	The act of avoiding something
j. **resemblance**, *noun*	Similar appearance

________________ 6. Jay should be more ___. If he is served the wrong meal in a restaurant, he eats it rather than speaking up to say there has been a mistake.

________________ 7. Few people believed the man's ___ that he had been kidnapped by aliens.

________________ 8. Bok choy is a popular Chinese vegetable that has a ___ to cabbage, to which it is related.

________________ 9. It is very helpful when a textbook is written with great ___.

________________ 10. The businessman avoided paying taxes for years, but he was finally caught and went to jail for tax ___. He had been so dishonest with so many people that nobody sympathized° with him or felt sorry to see him go to prison.

Word Parts

A. The prefix *ex-* can mean "beyond" or "out."

Examples: *extraordinary*° — beyond the ordinary
excerpt° — a part that is taken out of a whole work

On each answer line, write the word from the box that best completes the item.

a. **excerpt°**	b. **exclude°**	c. **extend**
d. **external°**	e. **extraordinary°**	

________________ 1. Since so many people had something to say, the meeting was ___ed another thirty minutes.

________________ 2. A TV show titled *That's Entertainment* includes ___s from many wonderful musical films.

________________ 3. When the children play, they prefer to ___ Hank because he is such a bully.

________________ 4. You are supposed to cut off the ___ layer of the kiwi fruit before eating it.

________________ 5. Mrs. Martin is an ___ woman. She has brought up four wonderful children by herself and also built a fine career at a bank where she is now a vice president.

B. The prefix *pre-* often means "before."

Examples: *precaution* — something done beforehand to avoid a problem
preserve° — to protect or keep in good condition, before there's a problem

On each answer line, write the word from the box that best completes the item.

f. **preconception**	g. **preheat**	h. **prepare**
i. **preserve°**	j. **pretest**	

________________ 6. To ___ for the trip, I have to wash and pack a lot of clothes.

________________ 7. Sometimes the math instructors gives students a ___ to help them see if they are ready for the real test.

________________ 8. The brownie recipe says to ___ the oven to 350 degrees.

________________ 9. To ___ her wedding dress for her daughter, Mrs. Henry keeps it covered in plastic and in a box.

________________ 10. New college students often have the ___ that instructors will remind them about assignments and tests. But in college, students must keep track of such things themselves.

➣ *Final Check*

Read the passages carefully. Then fill in each blank with the word that best fits the context.

A. She Changed My Mind

a. **clarify**	b. **extend**	c. **preconception**
d. **resemble**	e. **rigid**	

When I entered a Catholic school as a third-grader, I was very scared. The teachers were nuns, and although I had never known any nuns myself, I had a (1)____________________ of what a nun would be like. I pictured a hostile° woman dressed in a strange robe and sitting stiffly, as (2)____________________ as the ruler in her hand, and frowning when I forgot the answers to her questions. I imagined her deciding to (3)____________________ my school day by several hours after everyone else went home.

By the time I actually arrived in the classroom, I would not have been surprised if the teacher had fire coming out of her nostrils. Imagine my surprise, then, when I saw a pretty young woman standing at the front of the classroom. "Good morning!" she said cheerily. "My name is Sister Mary Elizabeth." I stared at her in surprise. She (4)____________________d my favorite aunt. Her face was not cold as I had expected, but warm and smiling. When she stopped by my desk later that morning to (5)____________________ an arithmetic problem, she knelt beside me and gave my ponytail a gentle, playful tug. One day in class was sufficient° for me to fall in love with Sister Mary Elizabeth and to realize how little I had really known about nuns.

B. So Sue Me

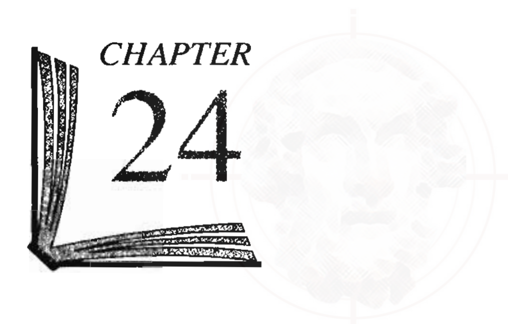
f. **assert**	g. **evade**	h. **negligent**
i. **precaution**	j. **vertical**	

"I'll sue!" This threat is all too often carried out. Americans have a strong tendency° to bring one another to court.

Take the case of the teenager who walked down the street, listening to music through the headphones of his personal stereo. He came to a curb and stepped into the street. A car running through a red light nearly hit him. Because he was listening to music, he had not heard the car coming. Did he sue the (6)____________________ driver? No — he sued the maker of the stereo. He claimed the stereo should have come with a note telling him to take the (7)____________________ of removing the stereo when he was crossing a street.

Another well-known case involved a similar circumstance°. A woman sued a fast-food chain for serving her coffee that was too hot. She spilled the coffee in her own lap, burned herself, and (8)____________________ed that the restaurant was to blame.

What is next? Should ice-cream cones carry warning labels saying, "Keep the cone in a (9)____________________ position or else the ice cream might fall off"? It seems that suing someone else has become yet another way for people to (10)____________________ taking responsibility for their own actions.




CHAPTER 24

anxious	**illustrate**
comprehend	**impression**
convince	**inferior**
dramatic	**overwhelm**
frank	**thorough**

Ten Words in Context

In the space provided, write the letter of the meaning closest to that of each **boldfaced** word. Use the context of the sentences to help you figure out each word's meaning.

1 anxious /ˈæŋkʃəs/ – *adjective*

- Dean was **anxious** about his new job. He worried about doing well and whether he would like his supervisor.
- You seemed **anxious** before the test, but you look more relaxed now.

___ *Anxious* means a. sure. b. troubled. c. late.

2 comprehend /ˌkɒmprɪˈhend/ – *verb*

- Although my Japanese friend knew English pretty well when she came to this country, she did not **comprehend** such slang terms as "cool" and "gross."
- I cannot **comprehend** how a computer works, but at least I understand how to use one for writing papers.

___ *Comprehend* means a. to believe. b. to remember. c. to understand.

3 convince /kənˈvɪns/ – *verb*

- The lawyer is sure she can **convince** the jury that her client is innocent.
- Cindy tried to **convince** her roommate that she had not stolen her necklace, but her roommate still did not believe her.

___ *Convince* means a. to learn from. b. to cause to believe. c. to keep from.

4 dramatic /drəˈmætɪk/ – *adjective*

- To hold our attention, our gym teacher used **dramatic** movements, such as waving her arms or jumping.
- Mr. Johnson prefers not to be noticed when he enters a room, but Mrs. Johnson enjoys making **dramatic** entrances, such as by swirling a bright purple cape around her shoulders.

___ *Dramatic* means a. distant. b. usual. c. attracting attention.

5 frank /fræŋk/ – *adjective*

- Mrs. Robins told her doctor, "Please be **frank** with me. If you know what is wrong with me, please tell me the truth."
- "To be **frank**," my sister said to me, "your new hairdo looks as if you had stuck your finger into an electrical socket."

___ *Frank* means a. careful. b. honest. c. worried.

6 illustrate /ˈɪləstreɪt/ – *verb*

- Whenever Mrs. Fine wanted to teach us a new word, she **illustrated** its use in a sentence.
- Pastor Gibson **illustrated** his point about forgiving by telling a story about one victim who learned to forgive his attacker.

___ *Illustrate* means a. to explain with an example. b. to change. c. to make difficult.

7 impression
/ɪmˈpreʃən/
– noun

- My first **impression** of Leroy was that he was loud and rude, but spending time with him showed me that under all the noise was a warm, friendly person.
- I had the **impression** that Vicky was coming on the ski trip, but at the last minute I learned that she had never really planned to come.

___ *Impression* means a. argument. b. rule. c. opinion.

8 inferior
/ɪnˈfɪərɪə(r)/
– adjective

- Silver is considered to be **inferior** to gold, but I still prefer silver jewelry.
- Joan's basketball skills are **inferior** to those of the other team members, but the coach believes Joan will improve quickly.

___ *Inferior to* means a. just like. b. worse than. c. new to.

9 overwhelm
/ˌəʊvəˈ*h*welm/
– verb

- You will **overwhelm** children if you give too many instructions at one time.
- A gang of teens **overwhelmed** the old man, holding him down while they took his money.

___ *Overwhelm* means a. to encourage. b. to overpower. c. to watch.

10 thorough
/ˈθʌrə/
– adjective

- After a **thorough** search of every corner of my apartment, I finally found my glasses — in my pocket.
- Before signing up your children at a day-care center, do a **thorough** check of how kind and well-trained the staff are.

___ *Thorough* means a. quick. b. careful. c. exciting.

Matching Words with Definitions

Following are definitions of the ten words. **Print** each word next to its definition. If you look closely at each word in context, you will be able to figure out its meaning.

1. ________________ Honest and open; sincere
2. ________________ Lower in value or quality
3. ________________ Complete; very carefully done
4. ________________ To understand completely
5. ________________ To make clear, as with an example, picture, or demonstration°
6. ________________ Worried; troubled; fearful about what might happen
7. ________________ Having very exciting, interesting qualities; striking; very noticeable
8. ________________ A belief, opinion, or thought — often based on little information
9. ________________ To persuade by argument or proof
10. ________________ To make mentally, emotionally, or physically helpless with too much of something; overpower

CAUTION: Do not go any further until you are sure the above answers are correct. Then you can use the definitions to help you in the following practices. Your goal is eventually to know the words well enough so that you don't need to check the definitions at all.

Sentence Check 1

Using the answer line, complete each item below with the correct word from the box.

a. **anxious**	b. **comprehend**	c. **convince**	d. **dramatic**	e. **frank**
f. **illustrate**	g. **impression**	h. **inferior**	i. **overwhelm**	j. **thorough**

______________ 1. If you say that you ___ a math problem, it means you understand it well.

______________ 2. A grade of C is ___ to a B.

______________ 3. Your first ___ of people is the same thing as your first opinion of them.

______________ 4. Too much confusing work would ___ anyone.

______________ 5. It usually takes more time to do a ___ job than a sloppy one.

______________ 6. Something frightening or troubling makes people ___.

______________ 7. A ___ outfit is unusual and will attract attention.

______________ 8. A ___ person is likely to tell you just what he or she thinks of your new hairdo, instead of giving you false compliments.

______________ 9. It should take proof to ___ a jury that someone is guilty.

______________ 10. A good way to make an idea more clear is to ___ it in some way. To do so, you might use an example or a picture.

Sentence Check 2

Using the answer lines, complete each item below with **two** words from the box.

____
______________ 1–2. Karla's bright lipstick, false eyelashes, and ___ red dress gave me the ___ that she liked to attract attention to herself.

____
______________ 3–4. Many people would feel ___ about moving to a foreign country, especially if they did not ___ the language.

____
______________ 5–6. My boss is so ___ that she will often tell us stories about her own mistakes to ___ her instructions.

____
______________ 7–8. A mother in the shoe store was trying to ___ her child not to choose a certain pair of shoes. "You like them because they have your favorite cartoon character on them," she explained, "but they are so ___ to this other pair that they will fall apart in a month."

____
______________ 9–10. "Don't let this big exam ___ you," said the instructor. "We've done a ___ job of reviewing the material, and I'm sure you will all do well."

➢ *Related Words*

Once you learn a new word, you can more easily understand many related words. Below are ten words related to the core words of this chapter. Use their definitions to help you write in the word that best completes each item.

a. **anxiety**, *noun*	Worry; fear
b. **comprehension**, *noun*	Understanding
c. **conviction**, *noun*	A strong belief
d. **frankness**, *noun*	Honesty
e. **impress**, *verb*	Affect; influence°

______________ 1. "You're right; I was speeding," the driver told the police officers, hoping to please them with his ___.

______________ 2. As I waited to hear how badly my car was damaged, I tried to control my ___.

______________ 3. My mother always had a ___ that you should help people less fortunate than yourself.

______________ 4. The lecture on the planets and stars was beyond the ___ of many people in the audience.

______________ 5. What adults do may ___ young children. For instance, if an adult they respect smokes, they are likely to think that smoking must be OK.

f. **drama**, *noun*	A play, or an event having exciting, play-like qualities
g. **dramatize**, *verb*	To turn into a play
h. **illustrator**, *noun*	A person who creates pictures for books, magazines, etc.
i. **inferiority**, *noun*	Poor quality as compared with something else
j. **impressive**, *adjective*	Having a strong positive effect

______________ 6. Some wonderful children's books were created by a famous husband-and-wife team; she is the writer, and he is the ___.

______________ 7. In many ads, advertisers will talk about the ___ of other brands compared with their own. Of course, they always assert° that their own product is the best.

______________ 8. Other drivers often slow down and stare at an accident, attracted by the ___ of the scene.

______________ 9. The TV movie ___d the life of Cesar Chavez, who fought for the rights of migrant workers. He tried to reform° the way farm employers treat their workers.

______________ 10. The high-school basketball player's performance was so ___ that several college teams wanted the player to join them.

➢ *Synonyms and Antonyms*

A. Synonyms. Write the letter of the word or phrase that most nearly means the **same** as each boldfaced word.

____ 1. **convince**

a. point out
b. study
c. persuade
d. fear

____ 2. **dramatic**

a. helpful
b. striking
c. confusing
d. not well-known

____ 3. **illustrate**

a. have faith
b. work hard
c. explain
d. argue

____ 4. **impression**

a. belief
b. proof
c. news
d. honesty

____ 5. **overwhelm**

a. delay
b. make clear
c. overpower
d. overwork

B. Antonyms. Write the letter of the word or phrase that most nearly means the **opposite** of each boldfaced word.

____ 6. **anxious**

a. calm
b. forgetful
c. busy
d. lonely

____ 7. **comprehend**

a. pretend
b. know
c. find
d. misunderstand

____ 8. **frank**

a. certain
b. expert
c. humorous
d. dishonest

____ 9. **inferior**

a. far away
b. well-known
c. better
d. simple

____ 10. **thorough**

a. truthful
b. risky
c. sensible
d. incomplete

➣ *Final Check*

Read the passages carefully. Then fill in each blank with the word that best fits the context.

A. Fear of Public Speaking

a. anxious	**b. convince**	**c. inferior**
d. overwhelm	**e. thorough**	

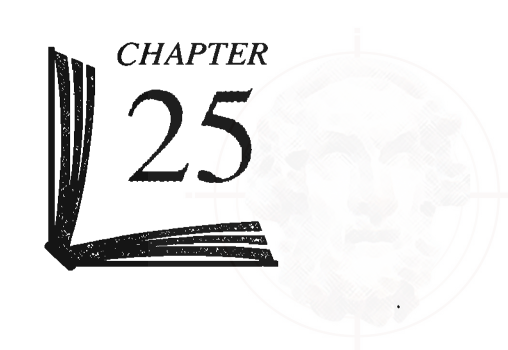
I get (1)________________________ even thinking about getting up in front of the whole class to give my history report. I don't know why I'm so worried. I guess I'm afraid that I will humiliate° myself. I have done a (2)________________________ job of preparing my report — I don't think I've left anything important out. I guess I compare myself with others and worry about whether my work is (3)________________________ to theirs. I hope that my fears won't (4)________________________ me and prevent me from doing a good job. I'll have to (5)________________________ myself that as long as I have made an effort, my report will be OK.

B. Mrs. Thornton's Condition

f. comprehend	**g. dramatic**	**h. frank**
i. illustrate	**j. impression**	

Adults should be honest with children. I can (6)________________________ this point by telling how I and my fellow first-graders suffered when our teacher had a baby. It wasn't that we didn't like babies or that we didn't like Mrs. Thornton. Most of us loved them both. The problem was that we did not realize she was pregnant, so her (7) ________________________ growth frightened us. Could that happen to us some day? Would we balloon up for no reason? Also, we were worried about her. But even when we made our concern evident° by asking what was happening to her, she gave us only silly answers like "I guess I ate too much breakfast!"

Finally, one day she didn't appear at school. Instead, our principal simply announced, "Mrs. Thornton will not be your teacher anymore." We were left with the (8)________________________ that something awful had happened to her. We were fearful and sad. Fortunately, the substitute teacher who took Mrs. Thornton's place saw our tearful faces and realized we did not (9)________________________ the situation. She explained that Mrs. Thornton had just had a baby and that she was fine and very happy. But we could have been saved a great deal of worry and fear if the adults in our lives had just been more (10)________________________ with us and had clarified° the situation.





acquire	**precede**
commitment	**resent**
formal	**solemn**
fragment	**spite**
fundamental	**symbolize**

Ten Words in Context

In the space provided, write the letter of the meaning closest to that of each **boldfaced** word. Use the context of the sentences to help you figure out each word's meaning.

1 acquire
/ə'kwaɪə(r)/
– verb

- While living in England, Brad **acquired** a little bit of an English accent.
- Before going on the trip, I **acquired** a good pair of hiking boots.

___ *Acquire* means a. to appreciate. b. to get. c. to do without.

2 commitment
/kə'mɪtmənt/
– noun

- Nita has made a **commitment** to stop smoking this year.
- The Greens made a **commitment** to give 5 percent of their income to charity.

___ *Commitment* means a. promise. b. piece. c. symbol.

3 formal
/'fɔːməl/
– adjective

- Because my boss is a rather **formal** person, I never call him by his first name or try to joke with him.
- A **formal** wedding can be very expensive, so Julie and Ed have decided on a casual wedding in the park.

___ *Formal* means a. interesting. b. traditional and proper. c. full of hope.

4 fragment
/'frægmənt/
– noun

- Don't go into the kitchen barefoot. I broke a glass, and there may still be a **fragment** on the floor.
- Scientists digging up an ancient city found a piece of pottery which they think is a **fragment** of a bowl.

___ *Fragment* means a. whole. b. copy. c. small part.

5 fundamental
/ˌfʌndə'mentəl/
– adjective

- A **fundamental** rule of water safety is this: Don't go swimming alone.
- One must learn the **fundamental** operations of arithmetic before going on to algebra.

___ *Fundamental* means a. based on fun. b. unusual. c. needing to be learned first.

6 precede
/ˌpriː'siːd/
– verb

- Do you think that friendship **precedes** love in a relationship? Or does love come first?
- On the East Coast, the 11 o'clock news **precedes** the *Tonight Show*, which begins at 11:30.

___ *Precede* means a. to come before. b. to be part of. c. to stand for.

7 resent
/rɪˈzent/
– verb

- The voters **resent** the fact that the mayor made promises he did not keep after his election.
- People often **resent** being given advice they did not ask for.

___ *Resent* means a. to feel bitter about. b. to feel better about. c. to feel frightened by.

8 solemn
/ˈsɒləm/
– adjective

- The fire chief told some jokes to get the children's attention. But when he began to speak about not playing with matches, he became **solemn**.
- The group of laughing children became **solemn** when they heard that their friend had been injured.

___ *Solemn* means a. hard to understand. b. silly. c. serious.

9 spite
/spaɪt/
– noun

- Turning against her former friend, the girl said with **spite** in her voice, "Everyone thinks you're a real loser."
- The disk jockeys' **spite** toward each other was obvious — each of them said nasty things about the other on the air.

___ *Spite* means a. puzzlement. b. hate. c. sense of humor.

10 symbolize
/ˈsɪmbəlaɪz/
– verb

- In ancient Egypt, a picture of a small circle with a dot in the middle **symbolized** the sun.
- During World War II, holding two fingers up in a V stood for victory; during the 1960s, it **symbolized** peace.

___ *Symbolize* means a. to be like. b. to stand for. c. to point toward.

Matching Words with Definitions

Following are definitions of the ten words. **Print** each word next to its definition. If you look closely at each word in context, you will be able to figure out its meaning.

1. ________________ Proper; not casual; according to custom or tradition
2. ________________ A promise to do something; pledge
3. ________________ To get through one's own actions; gain something as one's own
4. ________________ Basic; forming a foundation; essential
5. ________________ A small piece broken off something whole
6. ________________ To feel angered and injured by
7. ________________ An unfriendly feeling that causes one to want to hurt or shame another
8. ________________ To stand for; be a symbol of
9. ________________ Serious and respectful
10. ________________ To come before

CAUTION: Do not go any further until you are sure the above answers are correct. Then you can use the definitions to help you in the following practices. Your goal is eventually to know the words well enough so that you don't need to check the definitions at all.

➣ *Sentence Check 1*

Using the answer line, complete each item below with the correct word from the box.

a. **acquire**	b. **commitment**	c. **formal**	d. **fragment**	e. **fundamental**
f. **precede**	g. **resent**	h. **solemn**	i. **spite**	j. **symbolize**

______ 1. When I dropped the blue china vase, it broke into ___s.

______ 2. The neighbors' ___ to keep their street beautiful shows in their neat lawns and lovely flower gardens.

______ 3. Instead of having a ___ class, the instructor and students held a picnic.

______ 4. Every year, the library ___s about two hundred new books.

______ 5. Pamela felt such ___ toward her ex-husband that she went through their family photographs and cut his picture out of every one of them.

______ 6. I ___ the way my roommate cooks late-night snacks and then leaves dirty dishes for me to clean up.

______ 7. When I go to a movie theater, I try to get there early enough so that I can see the ads that ___ the film.

______ 8. Jerome is usually lighthearted, but he becomes ___ when he talks about his brother's struggle with mental illness.

______ 9. There are lots of rules about good manners, but the ___ idea behind them all is this: Treat people the way you wish they would treat you.

______ 10. At the Academy Awards, many actors wore little red ribbons to ___ their concern for people living with AIDS.

➣ *Sentence Check 2*

Using the answer lines, complete each item below with **two** words from the box.

______
______ 1–2. To remind themselves of why they are saving money, Sam and Christi ___d a dollhouse to ___ the real house they hope to buy someday.

______
______ 3–4. Everyone was very ___ at the much-loved doctor's funeral. Many people expressed their ___ to carrying on his good works and keeping his memory alive.

______
______ 5–6. On graduation day, the principal's speech, which ___s the handing out of diplomas, is always very ___. But afterward, one of the teachers gives a casual, funny talk.

______
______ 7–8. When Ray was ordered to share his toy with his sister, he showed his ___ by breaking the toy into pieces and handing the ___s to the girl.

______
______ 9–10. Maya ___s the fact that Will told her secret to other people. By doing that, he broke a ___ rule of friendship.

➣ *Related Words*

Once you learn a new word, you can more easily understand many related words. Below are ten words related to the core words of this chapter. Use their definitions to help you write in the word that best completes each item.

a. **acquisition**, *noun*	Something that has been gotten; something owned
b. **formality**, *noun*	An act done only to follow a rule
c. **fragmented**, *adjective*	Broken up
d. **solemnity**, *noun*	Seriousness
e. **symbol**, *noun*	Something that stands for something else

____________________ 1. My sister apologized for asking to see my driver's license when I wrote a check at the store where she worked. "It's just a ___," she said, "but the boss gets mad if I don't do it for everybody."

____________________ 2. My mother's family is so ___ that she doesn't even know where some of her brothers and sisters live.

____________________ 3. When I heard the tone of ___ in my mother's voice, I knew something important had happened.

____________________ 4. A red heart is a ___ of love or friendship; on Valentine's Day, people put hearts on Valentine's cards, hang them in windows, and make heart-shaped cakes.

____________________ 5. Myra collects stamps, so every time I visit her I have to look at her newest ___.

f. **commit**, *verb*	To seriously agree (to doing something)
g. **predecessor**, *noun*	One who held a position or job before another
h. **resentment**, *noun*	Bad feelings due to a sense of having been hurt
i. **spitefully**, *adverb*	In a manner filled with meanness
j. **symbolic**, *adjective*	Using symbols

____________________ 6. Still angry over her parents' divorce, Alma felt great ___ toward her new stepmother.

____________________ 7. The new cook at the restaurant is not as good as his ___.

____________________ 8. If you are going to join the basketball team, you must ___ to practicing twice a week.

____________________ 9. At some weddings, the newlyweds each take a candle and then use it to light a third candle, a ___ way of showing that their two lives are being joined.

____________________ 10. Angry that he hadn't gotten the raise he asked for, Marv ___ dropped a paper clip into the office copying machine and jammed it.

➣ *Analogies*

Each item below starts with a pair of words in CAPITAL LETTERS. For each item, figure out the relationship between these two words. Then decide which of the choices (*a*, *b*, *c*, or *d*) expresses a similar relationship. Write the letter of your choice on the answer line. (All the repeated words in these items are from this unit.)

____ 1. PRECEDE : FOLLOW ::

a. hurry : rush
b. earlier : later
c. speak : talk
d. bother : annoy

____ 2. SPITE : BITTERNESS ::

a. insult : compliment
b. abolish° : keep
c. love : hate
d. friendship : affection

____ 3. ACQUIRE : OWN ::

a. get : possess°
b. clarify° : confuse
c. locate : lose
d. buy : sell

____ 4. SOLEMN : PLAYFUL ::

a. funny : laughter
b. fun : party
c. ugly : talented
d. exciting : boring

____ 5. FRAGMENT : WHOLE ::

a. law school : lawyer
b. fixed : broken
c. dog : German shepherd
d. page : book

____ 6. HONEST : CORRUPT° ::

a. early : late
b. fundamental : basic
c. start : begin
d. symbolize : flag

____ 7. OIL : RESOURCES° ::

a. hate : love
b. give : gift
c. uncle : relatives
d. coal : mine

____ 8. FLEXIBLE° : RIGID° ::

a. old : ancient
b. ball : bat
c. food : grapes
d. peace : war

____ 9. VERTICAL° : TELEPHONE POLE ::

a. sufficient° : enough
b. flat : table
c. cold : summer
d. gray : black

____10. EXTEND° : SHORTEN ::

a. frank° : honest
b. easy : difficult
c. precise° : exact
d. wear : necklace

➣ *Final Check*

Read the passages carefully. Then fill in each blank with the word that best fits the context.

A. Wacky Weddings

a. commitment	b. formal	c. fundamental
d. precede	e. symbolize	

The ingredients needed for a wedding are pretty basic. They include two people who have decided to get married and someone qualified to marry them. But from the (1)________________ ingredients, people create an amazing variety° of ceremonies. Some weddings are very (2)________________. In those, the bride and groom wear traditional outfits — a fancy white dress for her, a tuxedo for him — and have bridesmaids and groomsmen. During such customary° weddings, the groom (3)________________s the bride down the aisle, and afterward, they leave hand in hand. But some people like their weddings to be playful rather than traditional. One man and woman got married while dressed as clowns. Another couple were married while riding a roller coaster. Yet others have said "I do" while they were skydiving or ice skating.

Is an "offbeat" wedding any less meaningful than a traditional one? The couples that choose very different weddings say no. They say the most important thing is the (4)________________ that they are making to one another. In the case of the two clowns, they said that their unusual wedding (5) ________________d their desire to keep fun in their marriage.

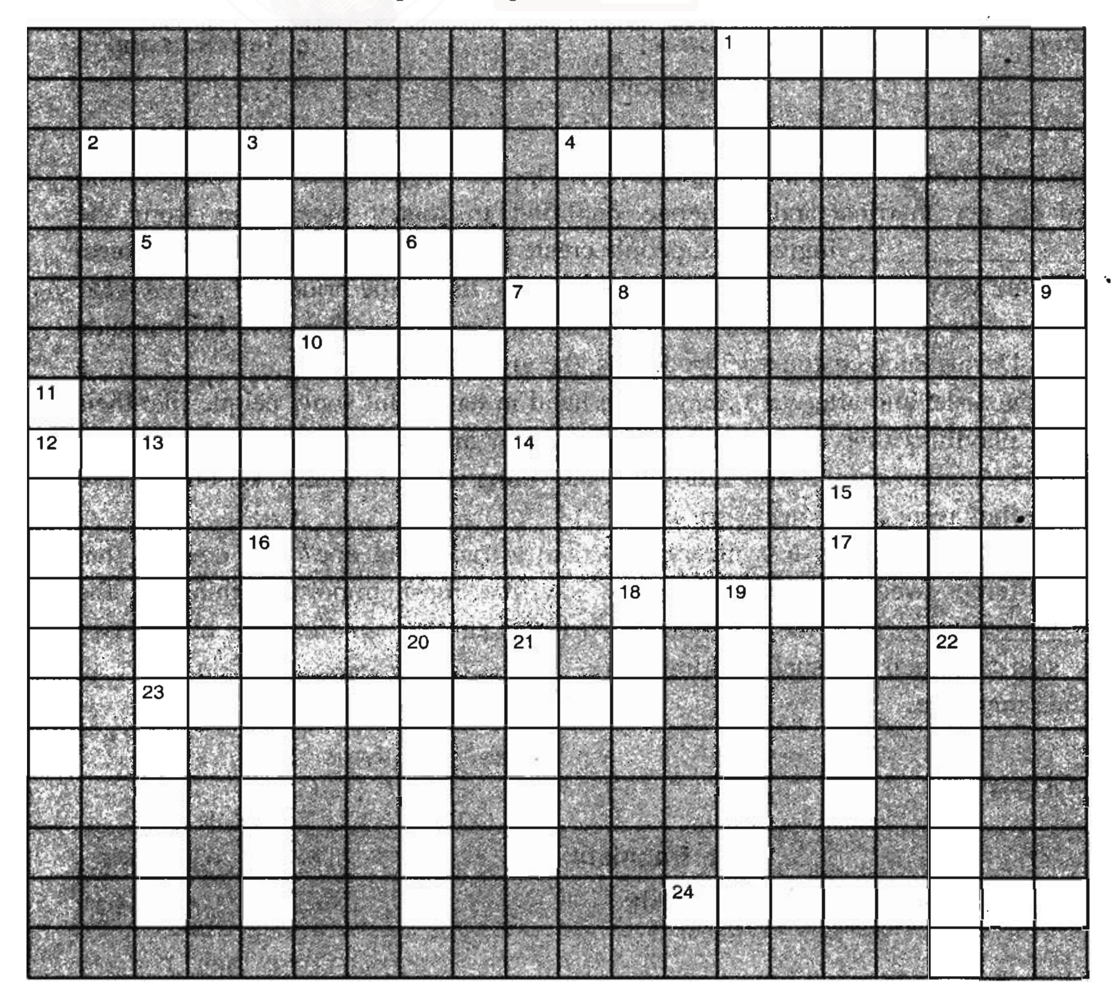
B. The Cost of Hatred

f. acquire	g. fragment	h. resent
i. solemn	j. spite	

An old story illustrates° the nature of (6)________________ and the terrible effects such meanness can have on people. There were two merchants in a village. They had grown up together, and each always (7)________________ed what the other did. No one could remember why the two men had first quarreled. But by the time they were middle-aged, their hatred of one another influenced° their lives greatly. Neither could bear to see the other happy or successful. If one of them (8)________________d a new house, the other had to get a bigger, better one. If one man's shop did well, the other was furious until his did better. One day, one of the men dropped on old jar that had been sitting on a shelf for years. It broke into (9)________________s. Immediately, a mighty genie appeared. "Oh, lucky man!" said the genie. "You have a great opportunity, for I will grant you any wish. But first I must give you one small warning. Whatever you wish for yourself, your enemy will receive in double measure. If you wish for a million dollars, he will receive two million. If you ask for a golden castle, he will have two." The man became (10)________________ and thought deeply. There were many wonderful things he could ask for, but he could not bear to think of his lifelong enemy receiving twice as much as he did. Finally he thought of an answer to his problem. A sickly smile spread over his face as he made his wish. "I wish, genie," he said, "that you would beat me half to death."

UNIT FIVE: Review

The box at the right lists twenty-five words from Unit Five. Using the clues at the bottom of the page, fill in these words to complete the puzzle that follows.



abolish
anxious
clarify
commitment
conflict
convince
corrupt
decay
dramatic
evade
formal
fragment
frank
negligent
possess
precede
precise
resemble
rigid
solemn
stress
sufficient
thorough
vary
vast

ACROSS

1. Honest and open; sincere
2. To persuade by argument or proof
4. To make clear or easy to understand
5. Dishonest; crooked
7. A quarrel or fight; disagreement
10. Very large in size, amount, or area
12. To look like or be similar to
14. Serious and respectful
17. Stiff; not bending
18. To escape or avoid through clever action
23. A promise to do something
24. Complete; very carefully done

DOWN

1. Proper; not casual; according to custom or tradition
3. To become different or to be different; change
6. To own; have
8. Careless
9. To come before
11. A small piece broken off something whole
13. As much as is needed
15. Exact; correct; accurate
16. Having very exciting, interesting qualities; striking; very noticeable
19. To put an end to
20. Mental or emotional tension; strain
21. To gradually break down; rot
22. Worried; troubled; fearful about what might happen

UNIT FIVE: Test 1

PART A

Choose the word that best completes each item and write it in the space provided.

______________ 1. Some of the new ___ for treating cancer are quicker and less unpleasant than older ones.

a. vicinities b. fragments c. conflicts d. procedures

______________ 2. In court, the decision of the jury must be ___. If even one juror has a different opinion, the decision doesn't count.

a. negligent b. vertical c. solemn d. unanimous

______________ 3. When we lived in the ___ of a railroad, we got so used to the noise of trains that we stopped noticing it.

a. resources b. vicinity c. precaution d. tendency

______________ 4. Marie's moods ___ with the weather. She's cheerful when the sun shines and gloomy when it's cloudy.

a. decay b. precede c. abolish d. vary

______________ 5. Even good events can create ___ in people's lives. For example, researchers have found that there's even more strain in getting married than in being fired from one's job.

a. fragment b. stress c. resource d. precaution

______________ 6. To ___ how much smell affects taste, our teacher had us eat a banana while smelling an onion.

a. evade b. illustrate c. resent d. overwhelm

______________ 7. Emily went through life feeling ___ to her brother, who she believed was more intelligent and talented than she could ever be.

a. inferior b. negligent c. thorough d. formal

______________ 8. The new principal wants to ___ report cards. The kids love the idea of having no report cards, but the teachers do not.

a. abolish b. corrupt c. overwhelm d. expand

______________ 9. When Jared's father asked, "What time did you come in last night?" Jared tried to ___ the question by answering, "I wasn't wearing a watch."

a. comprehend b. resent c. evade d. symbolize

______________ 10. When I take jeans off the clothesline, they often feel ___, so I shake them or put them in the clothes dryer for a few minutes to make them soft again.

a. anxious b. dramatic c. fundamental d. rigid

(Continues on next page)

________________ 11. Myrna's purple and black living room is certainly ___, but I prefer something a little less showy.

a. corrupt b. flexible c. precise d. dramatic

________________ 12. From the smile on Rico's face, you might have the ___ that he has no problems. The truth is, however, that his parents are both quite ill, and he lost his job two weeks ago.

a. commitment b. precaution c. impression d. fragment

________________ 13. The Masons were not very happy when their daughter ___ a nose-ring.

a. extended b. reformed c. acquired d. preceded

PART B

Write **C** if the italicized word is used **correctly**. Write **I** if the word is used **incorrectly**.

____ 14. I used to be *anxious* about going to the dentist, but then I started going to Dr. Craine. He's so funny and nice that I just can't feel afraid of him.

____ 15. Ms. Acosta is respected for being a *corrupt* teacher — she'll make you work hard, but you'll gain a lot from her course.

____ 16. It is impossible to cut the steak with these plastic forks and knives — they are so *flexible* that they snap into pieces as soon as you press hard on them.

____ 17. Because I missed the first fifteen minutes of the movie, I didn't really *comprehend* the rest of the story.

____ 18. Even though the police believe that Frank robbed the liquor store, they don't yet have *sufficient* evidence to arrest him.

____ 19. Parties at the Schroeders' house are rather *formal*, with guests taking off their shoes, helping themselves to food out of the refrigerator, and generally acting at home.

____ 20. I was *frank* enough to tell Edna that she looked lovely in her new purple dress, even though I really thought it made her look like an eggplant.

____ 21. After angrily tearing up her boyfriend's letter, Elaine wanted to read it again, so she glued the *fragments* back together.

____ 22. Whenever Mr. Fletcher goes for a walk, he *precedes* his dog. The dog runs ahead, pulling Mr. Fletcher by the leash.

____ 23. Mac did a *thorough* job of cleaning our windows; they seem almost invisible.

____ 24. The natural *resources* of South Africa include gold and diamonds.

____ 25. The teacher wanted to *overwhelm* his new students, so he gave them just a little homework at first.

Score (Number correct) ________ × 4 = ________%

Enter your score above and in the vocabulary performance chart on the inside back cover of the book.

UNIT FIVE: Test 2

PART A

Complete each item with a word from the box. Use each word once.

a. **assert**	b. **conflict**	c. **convince**	d. **decay**	e. **expand**
f. **fundamental**	g. **precaution**	h. **precise**	i. **renew**	j. **resemble**
k. **solemn**	l. **symbolize**	m. **tendency**		

________ 1. Two robins in the yard were having a noisy ___ over a worm that they both wanted to eat.

________ 2. In a forest, fallen trees ___ until they become part of the earth on the forest floor.

________ 3. When making a pair of pants, your measurements have to be ___ if you want the pants to fit well.

________ 4. Small dogs are quick and lively; large dogs have a ___ to be quiet and slow-moving.

________ 5. The TV ad ___s that this little eight-pound vacuum cleaner does a better job than many full-size vacuums.

________ 6. When Buck plans to eat a big dinner, he wears a pair of pants with a waist that ___s.

________ 7. Ella is so worried about a house fire that every time she leaves home, she takes the ___ of unplugging all the lamps, the toaster, and the TV.

________ 8. In my opinion, the smell of blue cheese ___s the smell of an old running shoe.

________ 9. Even though I had homework to do, Raoul ___d me I should go skating with him instead, telling me, "The exercise will wake up your brain."

________ 10. My parents were not strict about housekeeping, but they did have two ___ rules: we had to make our beds every morning, and we were never allowed to leave unwashed dishes overnight.

________ 11. Some paper companies are taking steps to ___ the forests they are cutting down, so that in the future, the forests will still be there.

________ 12. Although everyone was ___ at my grandfather's funeral, there was laughter at the luncheon afterward, when people began telling loving, funny stories about him.

________ 13. In many Christian religions, the dove is used in stories and pictures to ___ peace.

(Continues on next page)

PART B

Write **C** if the italicized word is used **correctly**. Write **I** if the word is used **incorrectly**.

_____ 14. The thing that prisoners *possess* most is freedom.

_____ 15. In some companies, workers can *extend* their workday by two hours and then enjoy three-day weekends.

_____ 16. The day was hot and sunny; *nevertheless*, almost no one showed up to use the city swimming pool.

_____ 17. It is a shame how spending time with the wrong people has *reformed* Nathan. He used to be a nice guy, but now he's rude and not exactly honest.

_____ 18. Most department stores have a few computer games for sale, but you have to go to a computer store for a really *vast* selection of games.

_____ 19. When Thomas tried to explain how the accident happened, he was so excited and confused that he only *clarified* the story.

_____ 20. Bonnie is a *negligent* baby sitter, always making sure the children are safely in bed and the house is cleaned up before the parents come home.

_____ 21. Although I had the *preconception* that Mrs. Arnold would be a difficult person to work for, I soon came to like her very much.

_____ 22. I painted a line from the left edge of the wall all the way over to the right edge, and then I covered that *vertical* line with a colorful border design.

_____ 23. The police arrested a man who wrote a *commitment* describing how he had robbed the video store.

_____ 24. I *resent* what my brother did — after I told him what I was going to buy for our mother's birthday, he rushed out and bought it first, so I had to come up with a new idea.

_____ 25. Judging from the way Tina and Frank keep smiling and winking at one another, there seems to be a good deal of *spite* between them.

Score (Number correct) ________ × 4 = ________%

Enter your score above and in the vocabulary performance chart on the inside back cover of the book.

UNIT FIVE: Test 3

PART A: Synonyms

In the space provided, write the letter of the choice that is most nearly the **same** in meaning as the **boldfaced** word.

____ 1. **assert** a) state as true b) put limits on c) give one's time d) make more difficult

____ 2. **commitment** a) location b) promise c) opinion d) difficulty

____ 3. **convince** a) persuade b) differ c) listen carefully d) own

____ 4. **decay** a) own b) look for c) break down d) replace

____ 5. **evade** a) stand for b) struggle c) make clear d) avoid

____ 6. **fragment** a) unfriendly feeling b) a snack c) piece of a whole d) true statement

____ 7. **fundamental** a) careless b) bored c) stiff d) basic

____ 8. **illustrate** a) replace b) stand for c) show through example d) get

____ 9. **impression** a) argument b) piece c) effort d) belief

____ 10. **nevertheless** a) even so b) afterward c) because d) even better

____ 11. **overwhelm** a) receive b) overpower c) understand d) come before

____ 12. **possess** a) lie about b) own c) differ d) show

____ 13. **precaution** a) something done to prevent a problem b) something done to fix a problem c) a problem d) a result

____ 14. **preconception** a) truth b) decision c) opinion formed before knowing about something d) area nearby

____ 15. **procedure** a) part of a whole b) way of doing something c) reason d) goal

____ 16. **reform** a) make better b) replace c) learn about d) prevent

____ 17. **renew** a) mention again b) make new again c) ignore d) make clear

____ 18. **resemble** a) be ahead b) be similar to c) worry about d) improve

____ 19. **resent** a) replace b) rot c) feel angry at d) differ

____ 20. **resources** a) something missing b) period of time c) enough d) wealth of a country

____ 21. **solemn** a) serious b) noticeable c) complete d) careless

____ 22. **symbolize** a) show b) make use of c) get larger d) stand for

____ 23. **tendency** a) anger b) habit c) tension d) belief

____ 24. **unanimous** a) in full agreement b) quarreling c) carefully done d) basic

____ 25. **vicinity** a) neighborhood b) wealth c) promise d) opinion

(Continues on next page)

PART B: Antonyms

In the space provided, write the letter of the choice that is most nearly **opposite** in meaning to the **boldfaced** word.

_____26. **abolish** a) differ b) create c) give away d) ignore

_____27. **acquire** a) make worse b) escape c) lose d) see

_____28. **anxious** a) dishonest b) tired c) careless d) relaxed

_____29. **clarify** a) include b) correct c) confuse d) grow strong

_____30. **comprehend** a) enjoy b) give away c) misunderstand d) remain the same

_____31. **conflict** a) anger b) loss c) profit d) agreement

_____32. **corrupt** a) useful b) honest c) loose d) careless

_____33. **dramatic** a) not noticeable b) brightly colored c) careful d) careless

_____34. **expand** a) agree b) confuse c) begin d) become smaller

_____35. **extend** a) begin b) give away c) shorten d) make worse

_____36. **flexible** a) flat b) stiff c) incomplete d) careless

_____37. **formal** a) attractive b) not sincere c) casual d) troubled

_____38. **frank** a) careless b) dishonest c) loose d) not enough

_____39. **inferior** a) recent b) better c) far away d) serious

_____40. **negligent** a) not enough b) lacking respect c) incorrect d) careful

_____41. **precede** a) get smaller b) grow c) happen again d) come after

_____42. **precise** a) not serious b) not complete c) not exact d) not common

_____43. **rigid** a) dull b) rude c) bending d) correct

_____44. **spite** a) reaction b) action c) growth d) friendly feeling

_____45. **stress** a) relaxation b) argument c) question d) idea

_____46. **sufficient** a) not enough b) not easy c) not true d) not basic

_____47. **thorough** a) not proper b) harmful c) boring d) not complete

_____48. **vary** a) confuse b) stay the same c) disappear d) make worse

_____49. **vast** a) small b) changing c) unpleasant d) better

_____50. **vertical** a) small b) better c) not interested d) horizontal

Score (Number correct) _______ × 2 = _______%

Enter your score above and in the vocabulary performance chart on the inside back cover of the book.

Posttest of the Whole Book

> **This test contains 100 items. In the space provided, write the letter of the choice that is closest in meaning to the boldfaced word.**

____ 1. To **determine** is to: a) suspect b) persuade c) find out d) compliment

____ 2. To **dispose of** is to: a) repeat b) ignore c) keep d) throw away

____ 3. Something that is **evident** is: a) hidden b) obvious c) musical d) frightening

____ 4. To **preserve** is to: a) pretend b) expect c) absorb d) protect

____ 5. To **restore** is to: a) destroy b) repair c) bury d) lift up

____ 6. To **possess** is to: a) plan b) adjust c) own d) leave unchanged

____ 7. A **procedure** is a(n): a) public b) opinion c) method d) piece of property

____ 8. To **renew** is to: a) find b) attempt c) force one's will upon d) make active again

____ 9. **Resources** are: a) agreements b) supplies c) responses d) costs

____ 10. To be **sufficient** is to be: a) less than is needed b) humorous c) enough d) empty

____ 11. To **appeal** to is to: a) repeat b) say no c) take away the outside part d) make a request

____ 12. To **establish** is to: a) flatten b) knock down c) start d) repeat

____ 13. One's **potential** is one's: a) ancestors b) possibility c) age d) preference

____ 14. A **variety** is a(n): a) opinion b) delay c) reason d) mixture

____ 15. Something **wholesome** is: a) foreign b) disgusting c) healthful d) childlike

____ 16. To **assume** is to: a) prove to be false b) argue for c) not care d) suppose to be true

____ 17. To **exhaust** is to: a) use up b) remove from sight c) refill d) fall

____ 18. The **maximum** amount is: a) the worst b) the lightest c) the most d) the least

____ 19. An **objective** is a(n): a) bad influence b) reason to believe c) goal d) insult

____ 20. To **protest** is to: a) test b) encourage c) prove d) speak out against

____ 21. To **communicate** is to: a) anger b) hurry c) inform d) mistake

____ 22. If you **deceive**, you: a) encourage b) mislead c) prevent d) forbid

____ 23. An **earnest** person is: a) sincere b) wealthy c) unpleasant d) dishonest

____ 24. A story that is **fiction** is: a) violent b) exciting c) made up d) romantic

____ 25. A **theory** is a(n): a) excuse b) opportunity c) certainty d) unproven explanation

(Continues on next page)

____ 26. To be **current** is to be: a) good tasting b) few in number c) modern d) likable

____ 27. To **maintain** is to: a) release from captivity b) admire c) prove to be correct d) keep in existence

____ 28. A **minimum** number is: a) the smallest possible b) desirable c) the largest possible d) more than expected

____ 29. To **originate** is to: a) begin b) imitate c) impress d) pretend

____ 30. To be **reliable** is to be: a) untrustworthy b) dependable c) easily tricked d) healthy

____ 31. **Appropriate** actions are: a) rude b) impulsive c) proper d) unwise

____ 32. To **bewilder** is to: a) confuse b) calm c) accept d) explain

____ 33. **Emotion** is: a) eyesight b) feeling c) movement d) payment

____ 34. To **investigate** is to: a) examine b) make secure c) abandon d) insist

____ 35. To be **legible** is to be: a) heavy b) noisy c) empty d) clear

____ 36. To **analyze** is to: a) disturb b) get rid of (something) c) examine d) dislike

____ 37. A **category** is a(n): a) denial b) means of expression c) lack of understanding d) group of similar things

____ 38. One who is **critical** is: a) well-liked b) lacking intelligence c) not taking sides in a quarrel d) disapproving

____ 39. A **deliberate** act is: a) amazing b) unwise c) done on purpose d) criminal

____ 40. **Frustration** is: a) discouragement b) great delight c) cruelty d) luck

____ 41. If you are **anxious**, you are: a) sleepy b) worried c) busy d) young

____ 42. To **convince** is to: a) disregard b) refuse to accept c) cause to believe d) clean up

____ 43. An **inferior** product is: a) poor in quality b) highly valued c) heavy d) unbreakable

____ 44. To **overwhelm** is to: a) dissolve b) make helpless c) understand d) make whole

____ 45. A **thorough** job is: a) forgotten b) wasted c) carefully done d) well-paying

____ 46. To be **conscious** is to be: a) drowsy b) purposeful c) depressed d) awake

____ 47. Something **external** is: a) buried deeply b) helpful c) unimportant d) on the outside

____ 48. To be **incredible** is to be: a) humble b) showy c) unbelievable d) wasteful

____ 49. **Internal** means: a) understood by few b) uncommon c) easy d) inner

____ 50. A **remedy** is a(n): a) source of amusement b) usual manner of doing something c) cure d) collection of writings

(Continues on next page)

____ 51. Something **artificial** is: a) not natural b) impressive c) natural d) worn out

____ 52. **Frequency** means: a) where something comes from b) how fast something is c) how loud something is d) how often something happens

____ 53. To **represent** is to: a) avoid talking about b) be a symbol of c) prefer d) allow to happen

____ 54. Something **temporary** is: a) serving for a limited time b) impossible to achieve c) expected to last forever d) clearly seen

____ 55. A **triumph** is a: a) compromise b) defeat c) victory d) battle

____ 56. To **coincide** is to: a) remove from consideration b) read carefully c) make clear d) happen at the same time

____ 57. A **considerable** size is: a) rather small b) too small c) rather large d) too large

____ 58. An **intentional** act is: a) accidental b) on purpose c) misguided d) against the law

____ 59. To be **unstable** is to be: a) unsteady b) strong c) usual d) complete

____ 60. To **utilize** is to: a) suggest b) control by force c) make use of d) accept as fact

____ 61. A **burden** is a(n): a) joy b) hardship c) reply d) payment

____ 62. To be **economical** is to be: a) wasteful b) rich c) forgiving d) thrifty

____ 63. An **extravagant** person is: a) critical b) messy c) wise d) wasteful

____ 64. **Security** is: a) loneliness b) protection c) immaturity d) ridicule

____ 65. To **sympathize** is to: a) avoid b) object c) refuse d) share feeling

____ 66. A **conflict** is a(n): a) period of time b) disagreement c) lesson d) point of view

____ 67. **Stress** is: a) excitement b) relaxation c) enjoyment d) tension

____ 68. A **unanimous** decision is: a) based on complete agreement b) mixed c) poorly thought out d) mistaken

____ 69. To **vary** is to: a) insist b) change c) remain the same d) recognize

____ 70. A **vicinity** is a(n): a) heated argument b) type of lamp c) written pamphlet d) area around a place

____ 71. To be **accustomed to** is to be: a) unused to b) unable to c) in the habit of d) angry at

____ 72. To **misinterpret** is to: a) have respect b) prefer c) get rid of d) understand incorrectly

____ 73. To **occur** is to: a) disappear b) happen c) respond d) repeat

____ 74. When you **revise**, you: a) copy without giving credit b) discard c) correct and improve d) fail to complete

____ 75. A **version** is a: a) deliberately mean remark b) poem c) hatred d) report based on one point of view

(Continues on next page)

____ 76. Something **apparent** is: a) made up of many small parts b) obvious c) impossible to see with the naked eye d) hard to understand

____ 77. If something is **automatic**, it: a) is easily moved b) improves over time c) cannot change d) operates by itself

____ 78. To **fulfill** is to: a) carry out b) fail at a task c) understand another's feelings d) give advice

____ 79. To **influence** is to: a) misunderstand b) be offended c) persuade d) excuse

____ 80. To **transfer** is to: a) inspect b) discontinue c) find fault d) send from one place to another

____ 81. To **complicate** is to: a) smooth over b) adjust c) recognize d) make difficult

____ 82. A **conscience** is a(n): a) sense of being awake b) sense of right and wrong c) inability to decide d) skill with numbers

____ 83. To **counsel** is to: a) improve b) give advice c) approve d) meet

____ 84. To **detect** is to: a) get b) complain c) notice d) remark

____ 85. To be **transparent** is to be: a) seen through easily b) dark in color c) sent away d) unusual

____ 86. An **attitude** is a: a) decrease b) frame of mind c) success d) height

____ 87. A **contrast** is a: a) bright color b) similarity c) suggestion d) striking difference

____ 88. To be **frank** is to be: a) honest b) youthful c) untruthful d) painful

____ 89. A **fragile** object is: a) expensive b) tasteless c) richly decorated d) easily broken

____ 90. An **impression** is a(n): a) lie b) opinion c) iron d) center (of something)

____ 91. An **emphasis** is a(n): a) refusal to speak b) betrayal c) stubborn act d) importance given to something

____ 92. To **interpret** is to: a) confuse b) make an effort c) explain d) light from within

____ 93. To **propose** is to: a) suggest b) persuade c) exaggerate d) leave out

____ 94. An **ultimate** experience is: a) common b) inefficient c) the greatest d) dangerous

____ 95. To be **vague** is to be: a) shining b) unclear c) in fashion d) embarrassing

____ 96. To **comprehend** is to: a) dislike b) understand c) protect d) repeat

____ 97. Something **dramatic** is: a) odd b) hard to notice c) impressive d) boring

____ 98. To be **excessive** is to be: a) too much b) slow to anger c) not enough d) kindly

____ 99. To **illustrate** is to: a) destroy b) give an example c) repair d) send off

____ 100. To **indicate** is to: a) point out b) fail to see c) go in d) pay attention to

STOP. This is the end of the test. If there is time remaining, you may go back and recheck your answers. When the time is up, hand in both your answer sheet and this test booklet to your instructor.

Appendixes



A Answer Key

1. Answers to the Pretest of the Whole Book

1. b   2. a   3. d   4. a
5. b   6. b   7. a   8. c
9. b   10. a   11. a   12. a
13. c   14. b   15. a   16. d
17. a   18. b   19. a   20. d
21. a   22. c   23. b   24. d
25. a   26. d   27. a   28. b
29. c   30. a   31. a   32. b
33. c   34. b   35. c   36. b
37. b   38. a   39. a   40. d
41. d   42. b   43. a   44. c
45. b   46. d   47. a   48. b
49. a   50. b   51. b   52. c
53. d   54. a   55. a   56. d
57. a   58. c   59. a   60. b
61. a   62. c   63. b   64. a
65. a   66. b   67. d   68. a
69. c   70. b   71. c   72. a
73. c   74. c   75. a   76. c
77. a   78. d   79. b   80. d
81. c   82. d   83. b   84. d
85. a   86. c   87. b   88. a
89. d   90. c   91. c   92. c
93. c   94. d   95. c   96. d
97. a   98. c   99. a   100. c

2. Answers to the Unit Pretests

Unit One Pretest	Unit Two Pretest	Unit Three Pretest	Unit Four Pretest	Unit Five Pretest
1. b	1. a	1. a	1. c	1. d
2. b	2. a	2. b	2. b	2. d
3. c	3. b	3. c	3. a	3. a
4. d	4. d	4. b	4. c	4. b
5. d	5. b	5. a	5. b	5. a
6. a	6. c	6. a	6. a	6. a
7. b	7. b	7. b	7. d	7. d
8. a	8. b	8. d	8. a	8. c
9. c	9. a	9. a	9. a	9. a
10. a	10. c	10. d	10. c	10. b
11. d	11. a	11. c	11. d	11. c
12. c	12. b	12. c	12. b	12. b
13. a	13. d	13. c	13. b	13. a
14. a	14. b	14. c	14. a	14. d
15. b	15. a	15. d	15. d	15. c
16. a	16. c	16. a	16. a	16. d
17. d	17. c	17. c	17. a	17. a
18. b	18. b	18. c	18. c	18. c
19. b	19. d	19. c	19. b	19. b
20. d	20. a	20. a	20. b	20. c
21. d	21. a	21. a	21. d	21. a
22. a	22. a	22. d	22. c	22. b
23. b	23. c	23. d	23. d	23. c
24. a	24. a	24. b	24. b	24. a
25. c	25. a	25. c	25. a	25. d
26. b	26. c	26. d	26. b	26. d
27. b	27. c	27. c	27. a	27. a
28. d	28. b	28. a	28. b	28. b
29. a	29. b	29. b	29. c	29. b
30. c	30. a	30. b	30. d	30. b
31. d	31. d	31. c	31. a	31. d
32. c	32. a	32. b	32. d	32. d
33. a	33. b	33. c	33. b	33. a
34. a	34. c	34. c	34. c	34. a
35. c	35. c	35. a	35. b	35. c
36. d	36. d	36. b	36. a	36. a
37. a	37. b	37. a	37. d	37. c
38. d	38. a	38. d	38. a	38. b
39. b	39. d	39. c	39. d	39. c
40. c	40. a	40. d	40. a	40. a
41. d	41. b	41. a	41. d	41. d
42. c	42. a	42. b	42. a	42. a
43. b	43. d	43. d	43. c	43. a
44. d	44. c	44. c	44. b	44. d
45. a	45. c	45. c	45. c	45. a
46. a	46. d	46. a	46. b	46. d
47. c	47. a	47. d	47. a	47. b
48. b	48. a	48. b	48. a	48. c
49. c	49. c	49. c	49. d	49. a
50. b	50. a	50. b	50. c	50. d

3. Answers to the Chapter Activities

Chapter 1 (Johnny Appleseed; The Lovable Leech?)

Ten Words in Context		*Matching Words with Definitions*		*Sentence Check 1*		*Sentence Check 2*	*Related Words*		*Word Parts/Syn-Ant/Analogies*		*Final Check*	
1. c	6. c	1. 3	6. 1	1. j	6. g	1–2. e, g	1. d	6. h	1. c	6. g	1. b	6. g
2. a	7. c	2. 6	7. 7	2. c	7. f	3–4. j, f	2. a	7. j	2. b	7. i	2. d	7. i
3. c	8. a	3. 2	8. 10	3. e	8. a	5–6. h, b	3. b	8. f	3. d	8. j	3. a	8. f
4. b	9. b	4. 9	9. 8	4. i	9. h	7–8. c, a	4. c	9. g	4. e	9. h	4. c	9. h
5. a	10. c	5. 4	10. 5	5. d	10. b	9–10. d, i	5. e	10. i	5. a	10. f	5. e	10. j

Chapter 2 (Finding Fault — And What to Do About It; What Do Your Hobbies Reveal About You?)

Ten Words in Context		*Matching Words with Definitions*		*Sentence Check 1*		*Sentence Check 2*	*Related Words*		*Word Parts/Syn-Ant/Analogies*		*Final Check*	
1. b	6. c	1. 9	6. 4	1. i	6. h	1–2. d, c	1. e	6. i	1. b	6. d	1. c	6. g
2. c	7. a	2. 2	7. 5	2. f	7. c	3–4. b, e	2. c	7. f	2. b	7. a	2. d	7. h
3. c	8. c	3. 3	8. 8	3. g	8. a	5–6. f, h	3. d	8. g	3. a	8. b	3. e	8. i
4. c	9. b	4. 7	9. 1	4. j	9. e	7–8. i, g	4. a	9. j	4. d	9. b	4. b	9. f
5. a	10. b	5. 6	10. 10	5. b	10. d	9–10. a, j	5. b	10. h	5. c	10. c	5. a	10. j

Chapter 3 (Fixing Up Furniture; Barbara's Date with Her Cousin)

Ten Words in Context		*Matching Words with Definitions*		*Sentence Check 1*		*Sentence Check 2*	*Related Words*		*Word Parts/Syn-Ant/Analogies*		*Final Check*	
1. c	6. a	1. 5	6. 9	1. b	6. h	1–2. e, f	1. c	6. g	1. b	6. j	1. b	6. g
2. b	7. b	2. 3	7. 6	2. e	7. f	3–4. j, g	2. a	7. j	2. e	7. i	2. e	7. j
3. c	8. b	3. 4	8. 8	3. a	8. c	5–6. b, c	3. d	8. f	3. d	8. f	3. a	8. h
4. a	9. a	4. 2	9. 7	4. j	9. g	7–8. i, d	4. e	9. i	4. c	9. g	4. c	9. i
5. b	10. c	5. 10	10. 1	5. d	10. i	9–10. a, h	5. b	10. h	5. a	10. h	5. d	10. f

Chapter 4 (The Vacuum-Cleaner Salesman; Peace at Last)

Ten Words in Context		*Matching Words with Definitions*		*Sentence Check 1*		*Sentence Check 2*	*Related Words*		*Word Parts/Syn-Ant/Analogies*		*Final Check*	
1. b	6. a	1. 8	6. 9	1. j	6. c	1–2. e, i	1. b	6. i	1. d	6. a	1. b	6. g
2. a	7. b	2. 1	7. 5	2. b	7. d	3–4. j, c	2. d	7. g	2. b	7. d	2. d	7. i
3. a	8. b	3. 3	8. 2	3. g	8. f	5–6. a, g	3. c	8. j	3. a	8. c	3. a	8. h
4. c	9. b	4. 7	9. 10	4. a	9. h	7–8. d, f	4. a	9. h	4. a	9. b	4. e	9. f
5. b	10. c	5. 6	10. 4	5. i	10. e	9–10. h, b	5. e	10. f	5. c	10. b	5. c	10. j

Chapter 5 (Study Skills to the Rescue!; How to Control Children)

Ten Words in Context		*Matching Words with Definitions*		*Sentence Check 1*		*Sentence Check 2*	*Related Words*		*Word Parts/Syn-Ant/Analogies*		*Final Check*	
1. b	6. b	1. 8	6. 5	1. i	6. f	1–2. a, b	1. e	6. i	1. a	6. b	1. b	6. g
2. c	7. b	2. 2	7. 3	2. j	7. c	3–4. i, g	2. d	7. h	2. c	7. a	2. a	7. i
3. a	8. c	3. 9	8. 4	3. a	8. g	5–6. d, h	3. a	8. f	3. d	8. d	3. e	8. h
4. c	9. a	4. 6	9. 7	4. d	9. e	7–8. j, e	4. c	9. j	4. c	9. d	4. c	9. f
5. c	10. c	5. 1	10. 10	5. h	10. b	9–10. c, f	5. b	10. g	5. d	10. a	5. d	10. j

Chapter 6 (Toasters; A Mean Man)

Ten Words in Context		*Matching Words with Definitions*		*Sentence Check 1*		*Sentence Check 2*	*Related Words*		*Word Parts/Syn-Ant/Analogies*		*Final Check*	
1. b	6. c	1. 7	6. 2	1. j	6. b	1–2. i, c	1. d	6. h	1. d	6. h	1. d	6. i
2. a	7. c	2. 4	7. 8	2. a	7. c	3–4. f, j	2. a	7. g	2. c	7. g	2. e	7. g
3. a	8. b	3. 3	8. 9	3. f	8. d	5–6. g, e	3. b	8. i	3. b	8. j	3. b	8. h
4. b	9. c	4. 6	9. 1	4. i	9. g	7–8. b, a	4. c	9. j	4. e	9. f	4. a	9. f
5. a	10. b	5. 5	10. 10	5. h	10. e	9–10. h, d	5. e	10. f	5. a	10. i	5. c	10. j

Chapter 7 (A Special Memory; Watch Your Manners!)

Ten Words in Context		*Matching Words with Definitions*		*Sentence Check 1*		*Sentence Check 2*	*Related Words*		*Word Parts/Syn-Ant/Analogies*		*Final Check*	
1. c	6. c	1. 9	6. 8	1. g	6. a	1–2. a, b	1. e	6. j	1. c	6. a	1. b	6. g
2. c	7. c	2. 7	7. 3	2. c	7. f	3–4. e, g	2. a	7. h	2. d	7. b	2. d	7. h
3. b	8. c	3. 6	8. 10	3. j	8. d	5–6. j, i	3. b	8. i	3. d	8. d	3. c	8. f
4. a	9. c	4. 4	9. 2	4. b	9. i	7–8. c, d	4. d	9. f	4. a	9. c	4. a	9. j
5. a	10. b	5. 5	10. 1	5. h	10. e	9–10. f, h	5. c	10. g	5. b	10. a	5. e	10. i

Chapter 8 (Big Brothers and Sisters; Kevin's First Date)

Ten Words in Context	*Matching Words with Definitions*	*Sentence Check 1*	*Sentence Check 2*	*Related Words*	*Word Parts/Syn-Ant/Analogies*	*Final Check*
1. a 6. c	1. 5 6. 1	1. f 6. a	1–2. e, j	1. b 6. h	1. c 6. g	1. a 6. f
2. c 7. a	2. 2 7. 4	2. h 7. e	3–4. i, a	2. d 7. f	2. d 7. j	2. b 7. i
3. b 8. c	3. 9 8. 8	3. i 8. d	5–6. b, f	3. c 8. i	3. b 8. f	3. e 8. h
4. b 9. a	4. 10 9. 3	4. b 9. g	7–8. h, g	4. a 9. g	4. a 9. h	4. d 9. g
5. c 10. c	5. 7 10. 6	5. j 10. c	9–10. d, c	5. e 10. j	5. e 10. i	5. c 10. j

Chapter 9 (Differences in a Gym Program; Teaching A Lesson)

Ten Words in Context	*Matching Words with Definitions*	*Sentence Check 1*	*Sentence Check 2*	*Related Words*	*Word Parts/Syn-Ant/Analogies*	*Final Check*
1. c 6. a	1. 10 6. 4	1. b 6. g	1–2. j, e	1. b 6. d	1. d 6. b	1. a 6. g
2. a 7. c	2. 7 7. 5	2. i 7. c	3–4. b, h	2. a 7. b	2. c 7. c	2. e 7. h
3. b 8. c	3. 2 8. 3	3. h 8. e	5–6. i, c	3. d 8. a	3. d 8. d	3. b 8. f
4. c 9. a	4. 8 9. 6	4. j 9. d	7–8. d, f	4. c 9. c	4. a 9. a	4. c 9. j
5. c 10. a	5. 1 10. 9	5. f 10. a	9–10. g, a	5. e 10. e	5. a 10. b	5. d 10. i

Chapter 10 (Knowing How to Argue; A Change of School, A Change of Heart)

Ten Words in Context	*Matching Words with Definitions*	*Sentence Check 1*	*Sentence Check 2*	*Related Words*	*Word Parts/Syn-Ant/Analogies*	*Final Check*
1. c 6. c	1. 1 6. 2	1. c 6. i	1–2. a, e	1. d 6. j	1. a 6. b	1. b 6. g
2. c 7. b	2. 7 7. 5	2. b 7. d	3–4. b, c	2. b 7. h	2. c 7. d	2. d 7. i
3. b 8. b	3. 9 8. 10	3. f 8. a	5–6. i, j	3. c 8. i	3. c 8. d	3. a 8. f
4. a 9. c	4. 3 9. 6	4. g 9. e	7–8. d, f	4. a 9. f	4. d 9. a	4. e 9. h
5. c 10. a	5. 4 10. 8	5. j 10. h	9–10. g, h	5. e 10. g	5. b 10. b	5. c 10. j

Chapter 11 (Coming Out of a Coma; The Office Doughnut Contest)

Ten Words in Context	*Matching Words with Definitions*	*Sentence Check 1*	*Sentence Check 2*	*Related Words*	*Word Parts/Syn-Ant/Analogies*	*Final Check*
1. c 6. a	1. 10 6. 8	1. f 6. b	1–2. i, c	1. d 6. f	1. d 6. h	1. a 6. f
2. b 7. a	2. 5 7. 1	2. d 7. h	3–4. d, f	2. a 7. j	2. c 7. g	2. c 7. h
3. c 8. b	3. 2 8. 3	3. g 8. i	5–6. e, j	3. b 8. g	3. a 8. f	3. b 8. g
4. c 9. c	4. 4 9. 6	4. j 9. a	7–8. a, b	4. c 9. h	4. b 9. i	4. d 9. i
5. b 10. b	5. 9 10. 7	5. e 10. c	9–10. h, g	5. e 10. i	5. e 10. j	5. e 10. j

Chapter 12 (The People's Choice; The Christmas Wars)

Ten Words in Context	*Matching Words with Definitions*	*Sentence Check 1*	*Sentence Check 2*	*Related Words*	*Word Parts/Syn-Ant/Analogies*	*Final Check*
1. b 5. a	1. 9 6. 3	1. j 6. c	1–2. f, d	1. b 6. j	1. c 6. c	1. e 6. f
2. a 6. c	2. 4 7. 7	2. a 7. h	3–4. c, a	2. a 7. f	2. c 7. b	2. c 7. i
3. c 7. b	3. 6 8. 2	3. d 8. g	5–6. j, h	3. e 8. g	3. d 8. d	3. b 8. g
4. c 8. a	4. 5 9. 8	4. f 9. i	7–8. i, e	4. d 9. i	4. a 9. a	4. d 9. j
5. b 10. c	5. 10 10. 1	5. b 10. e	9–10. g, b	5. c 10. h	5. c 10. b	5. a 10. h

Chapter 13 (What's Your Type?; What a Circus!)

Ten Words in Context	*Matching Words with Definitions*	*Sentence Check 1*	*Sentence Check 2*	*Related Words*	*Word Parts/Syn-Ant/Analogies*	*Final Check*
1. c 6. c	1. 9 6. 2	1. j 6. h	1–2. i, h	1. e 6. h	1. b 6. j	1. e 6. j
2. a 7. a	2. 8 7. 4	2. a 7. c	3–4. e, f	2. b 7. f	2. c 7. g	2. c 7. i
3. a 8. b	3. 1 8. 6	3. f 8. d	5–6. d, a	3. a 8. j	3. e 8. i	3. d 8. g
4. c 9. a	4. 10 9. 5	4. i 9. g	7–8. c, b	4. d 9. g	4. d 9. h	4. b 9. f
5. b 10. c	5. 3 10. 7	5. b 10. e	9–10. j, g	5. c 10. i	5. a 10. f	5. a 10. h

Chapter 14 (Practicing Kindness; The Stinking Rose)

Ten Words in Context	*Matching Words with Definitions*	*Sentence Check 1*	*Sentence Check 2*	*Related Words*	*Word Parts/Syn-Ant/Analogies*	*Final Check*
1. c 6. b	1. 9 6. 10	1. b 6. c	1–2. g, c	1. e 6. g	1. b 6. b	1. d 6. h
2. a 7. c	2. 1 7. 7	2. i 7. f	3–4. a, i	2. c 7. h	2. a 7. d	2. e 7. f
3. c 8. a	3. 8 8. 5	3. d 8. j	5–6. d, e	3. a 8. i	3. c 8. a	3. c 8. g
4. b 9. b	4. 4 9. 2	4. e 9. g	7–8. f, h	4. d 9. j	4. d 9. d	4. a 9. j
5. a 10. a	5. 3 10. 6	5. h 10. a	9–10. j, b	5. b 10. f	5. b 10. d	5. b 10. i

Chapter 15 (A Modern Fairy Tale; Wolf Children)

Ten Words in Context	*Matching Words with Definitions*	*Sentence Check 1*	*Sentence Check 2*	*Related Words*	*Word Parts/Syn-Ant/Analogies*	*Final Check*
1. c 6. a	1. 9 6. 7	1. i 6. j	1–2. b, a	1. d 6. g	1. b 6. c	1. d 6. f
2. a 7. b	2. 4 7. 8	2. a 7. h	3–4. d, e	2. a 7. h	2. c 7. d	2. a 7. h
3. a 8. c	3. 10 8. 2	3. g 8. d	5–6. g, j	3. b 8. i	3. c 8. a	3. c 8. i
4. b 9. b	4. 5 9. 3	4. c 9. f	7–8. f, h	4. c 9. f	4. c 9. b	4. b 9. g
5. c 10. a	5. 6 10. 1	5. e 10. b	9–10. c, i	5. e 10. j	5. d 10. b	5. e 10. j

Chapter 16 (A Mismatched Couple; A Campaign to Become Class President)

Ten Words in Context	*Matching Words with Definitions*	*Sentence Check 1*	*Sentence Check 2*	*Related Words*	*Word Parts/Syn-Ant/Analogies*	*Final Check*
1. b 6. b	1. 4 6. 6	1. j 6. a	1–2. j, i	1. d 6. g	1. a 6. f	1. b 6. i
2. a 7. c	2. 10 7. 3	2. c 7. f	3–4. b, h	2. b 7. f	2. d 7. j	2. c 7. g
3. c 8. c	3. 2 8. 1	3. g 8. h	5–6. d, f	3. e 8. h	3. c 8. i	3. a 8. j
4. b 9. a	4. 7 9. 8	4. e 9. d	7–8. a, c	4. a 9. i	4. b 9. h	4. d 9. f
5. c 10. b	5. 9 10. 5	5. i 10. b	9–10. g, e	5. c 10. j	5. e 10. g	5. e 10. h

Chapter 17 (The Famous Detective; Why So Quiet?)

Ten Words in Context	*Matching Words with Definitions*	*Sentence Check 1*	*Sentence Check 2*	*Related Words*	*Word Parts/Syn-Ant/Analogies*	*Final Check*
1. c 6. a	1. 3 6. 9	1. a 6. h	1–2. g, h	1. b 6. h	1. d 6. b	1. c 6. h
2. b 7. b	2. 2 7. 7	2. d 7. i	3–4. j, i	2. c 7. f	2. b 7. c	2. a 7. f
3. b 8. a	3. 5 8. 1	3. c 8. e	5–6. c, b	3. d 8. i	3. a 8. a	3. b 8. j
4. c 9. b	4. 6 9. 4	4. b 9. g	7–8. e, d	4. e 9. j	4. c 9. d	4. d 9. g
5. c 10. b	5. 10 10. 8	5. j 10. f	9–10. f, a	5. a 10. g	5. c 10. d	5. e 10. i

Chapter 18 (Fear of Speaking; Do You Believe in Magic?)

Ten Words in Context	*Matching Words with Definitions*	*Sentence Check 1*	*Sentence Check 2*	*Related Words*	*Word Parts/Syn-Ant/Analogies*	*Final Check*
1. c 6. a	1. 1 6. 9	1. f 6. b	1–2. f, g	1. d 6. g	1. d 6. h	1. e 6. h
2. b 7. a	2. 10 7. 7	2. c 7. h	3–4. h, c	2. b 7. h	2. b 7. i	2. b 7. f
3. b 8. c	3. 6 8. 4	3. a 8. e	5–6. b, a	3. a 8. f	3. a 8. f	3. c 8. j
4. c 9. b	4. 2 9. 3	4. i 9. j	7–8. d, i	4. e 9. i	4. c 9. g	4. a 9. i
5. b 10. a	5. 5 10. 8	5. g 10. d	9–10. e, j	5. c 10. j	5. e 10. j	5. d 10. g

Chapter 19 (The Miracle Runner; One of Those Days)

Ten Words in Context	*Matching Words with Definitions*	*Sentence Check 1*	*Sentence Check 2*	*Related Words*	*Word Parts/Syn-Ant/Analogies*	*Final Check*
1. c 6. a	1. 9 6. 2	1. b 6. a	1–2. c, a	1. d 6. h	1. a 6. b	1. e 6. j
2. c 7. a	2. 8 7. 7	2. i 7. d	3–4. f, g	2. a 7. f	2. a 7. a	2. c 7. i
3. a 8. c	3. 1 8. 5	3. g 8. c	5–6. j, b	3. c 8. g	3. d 8. c	3. d 8. g
4. b 9. c	4. 4 9. 3	4. j 9. f	7–8. i, d	4. b 9. j	4. c 9. d	4. a 9. f
5. b 10. c	5. 6 10. 10	5. h 10. e	9–10. h, e	5. e 10. i	5. d 10. b	5. b 10. h

Chapter 20 (Pregnancy and Alcohol; A Criminal with a Tail)

Ten Words in Context	*Matching Words with Definitions*	*Sentence Check 1*	*Sentence Check 2*	*Related Words*	*Word Parts/Syn-Ant/Analogies*	*Final Check*
1. b 6. a	1. 8 6. 5	1. e 6. f	1–2. i, h	1. b 6. h	1. d 6. a	1. c 6. j
2. a 7. b	2. 2 7. 6	2. h 7. g	3–4. j, c	2. e 7. i	2. b 7. d	2. a 7. i
3. c 8. a	3. 1 8. 10	3. c 8. b	5–6. b, e	3. d 8. g	3. a 8. b	3. e 8. f
4. a 9. b	4. 3 9. 9	4. d 9. i	7–8. g, d	4. a 9. f	4. c 9. b	4. d 9. h
5. c 10. b	5. 7 10. 4	5. j 10. a	9–10. a, f	5. c 10. j	5. d 10. d	5. b 10. g

Chapter 21 (Traveling with Children; Saving Earth's Natural Supplies)

Ten Words in Context	*Matching Words with Definitions*	*Sentence Check 1*	*Sentence Check 2*	*Related Words*	*Word Parts/Syn-Ant/Analogies*	*Final Check*
1. a 6. b	1. 5 6. 6	1. e 6. i	1–2. a, f	1. d 6. h	1. e 6. h	1. e 6. i
2. a 7. c	2. 4 7. 9	2. h 7. c	3–4. j, c	2. c 7. f	2. a 7. g	2. a 7. h
3. b 8. a	3. 10 8. 7	3. a 8. g	5–6. g, h	3. b 8. g	3. d 8. j	3. d 8. f
4. c 9. b	4. 1 9. 2	4. j 9. d	7–8. b, d	4. e 9. j	4. c 9. i	4. c 9. j
5. c 10. c	5. 8 10. 3	5. b 10. f	9–10. e, i	5. a 10. i	5. b 10. f	5. b 10. g

Chapter 22 (More Fat, Anyone?; Is Prison Effective?)

Ten Words in Context	*Matching Words with Definitions*	*Sentence Check 1*	*Sentence Check 2*	*Related Words*	*Word Parts/Syn-Ant/Analogies*	*Final Check*
1. b 6. c	1. 4 6. 1	1. g 6. j	1–2. i, f	1. c 6. h	1. a 6. c	1. c 6. i
2. a 7. a	2. 3 7. 7	2. f 7. b	3–4. h, a	2. b 7. f	2. b 7. a	2. e 7. j
3. c 8. b	3. 6 8. 9	3. c 8. h	5–6. j, c	3. e 8. g	3. d 8. d	3. a 8. g
4. c 9. c	4. 2 9. 10	4. d 9. i	7–8. b, d	4. d 9. i	4. d 9. b	4. d 9. f
5. a 10. c	5. 8 10. 5	5. e 10. a	9–10. e, g	5. a 10. j	5. c 10. d	5. b 10. h

Chapter 23 (She Changed My Mind; So Sue Me)

Ten Words in Context	*Matching Words with Definitions*	*Sentence Check 1*	*Sentence Check 2*	*Related Words*	*Word Parts/Syn-Ant/Analogies*	*Final Check*
1. c 6. c	1. 7 6. 1	1. b 6. g	1–2. e, f	1. d 6. g	1. c 6. h	1. c 6. h
2. a 7. b	2. 8 7. 3	2. a 7. h	3–4. h, g	2. c 7. f	2. a 7. j	2. e 7. i
3. b 8. b	3. 2 8. 10	3. i 8. e	5–6. b, c	3. a 8. j	3. b 8. g	3. b 8. f
4. a 9. c	4. 6 9. 9	4. c 9. f	7–8. a, d	4. b 9. h	4. d 9. i	4. d 9. j
5. b 10. c	5. 5 10. 4	5. d 10. j	9–10. i, j	5. e 10. i	5. e 10. f	5. a 10. g

Chapter 24 (Fear of Public Speaking; Mrs. Thornton's Condition)

Ten Words in Context	*Matching Words with Definitions*	*Sentence Check 1*	*Sentence Check 2*	*Related Words*	*Word Parts/Syn-Ant/Analogies*	*Final Check*
1. b 6. a	1. 5 6. 1	1. b 6. a	1–2. d, g	1. d 6. h	1. c 6. a	1. a 6. i
2. c 7. c	2. 8 7. 4	2. h 7. d	3–4. a, b	2. a 7. i	2. b 7. d	2. e 7. g
3. b 8. b	3. 10 8. 7	3. g 8. e	5–6. e, f	3. c 8. f	3. c 8. d	3. c 8. j
4. c 9. b	4. 2 9. 3	4. i 9. c	7–8. c, h	4. b 9. g	4. a 9. c	4. d 9. f
5. b 10. b	5. 6 10. 9	5. j 10. f	9–10. i, j	5. e 10. j	5. c 10. d	5. b 10. h

Chapter 25 (Wacky Weddings; The Cost of Hatred)

Ten Words in Context	*Matching Words with Definitions*	*Sentence Check 1*	*Sentence Check 2*	*Related Words*	*Word Parts/Syn-Ant/Analogies*	*Final Check*
1. b 6. a	1. 3 6. 7	1. d 6. g	1–2. a, j	1. b 6. h	1. b 6. a	1. c 6. j
2. a 7. a	2. 2 7. 9	2. b 7. f	3–4. h, b	2. c 7. g	2. d 7. c	2. b 7. h
3. b 8. c	3. 1 8. 10	3. c 8. h	5–6. f, c	3. d 8. f	3. a 8. d	3. d 8. f
4. c 9. b	4. 5 9. 8	4. a 9. e	7–8. i, d	4. e 9. j	4. d 9. b	4. a 9. g
5. c 10. b	5. 4 10. 6	5. i 10. j	9–10. g, e	5. a 10. i	5. d 10. b	5. e 10. i

4. Answers to the Posttest of the Whole Book

1. c
2. d
3. b
4. d
5. b
6. c
7. c
8. d
9. b
10. c
11. d
12. c
13. b
14. d
15. c
16. d
17. a
18. c
19. c
20. d
21. c
22. b
23. a
24. c
25. d
26. c
27. d
28. a
29. a
30. b
31. c
32. a
33. b
34. a
35. d
36. c
37. d
38. d
39. c
40. a
41. b
42. c
43. a
44. b
45. c
46. d
47. d
48. c
49. d
50. c
51. a
52. d
53. b
54. a
55. c
56. d
57. c
58. b
59. a
60. c
61. b
62. d
63. d
64. b
65. d
66. b
67. d
68. a
69. b
70. d
71. c
72. d
73. b
74. c
75. d
76. b
77. d
78. a
79. c
80. d
81. d
82. b
83. b
84. c
85. a
86. b
87. d
88. a
89. d
90. b
91. d
92. c
93. a
94. c
95. b
96. b
97. c
98. a
99. b
100. a

B Word List

abandon v. 放弃
abolish v. 废止，彻底废除(法律、制度、习俗等)
abrupt a. 突然的，意外的
abundant a. 大量的，多的，充足的
accompany v. 陪伴，陪同
accustomed a. 习惯的，适应了的
acquire v. (尤指通过努力)取得，获得；学到
adequate a. 适当的，胜任的
advise v. 劝告，忠告；向…提供意见
aggravate v. 加重，加剧；使恶化
alert a. 警觉的，警惕的
analyze v. 细察，分析
anticipate v. 预期，预料
anxious a. 焦虑的，发愁的
apparent a. 清晰可见的
appeal v. 呼吁，吁请，恳求
appropriate a. 适合的，恰当的；相称的
approximately adv. 大约，大概
artificial a. 人工的，人造的；人为的
assert v. 肯定地说出，坚定地断言
assume v. 假定，假设；想当然地认为
assure v. 深信不疑地对…说，向…保证
astonish v. 使惊讶
attitude n. 态度，看法
authentic a. 真的，真正的；逼真的
automatic a. 自动的，以自动装置完成的
awkward a. (动作、形态等)不雅观的，难看的
betray v. 背叛；出卖
bewilder v. 使迷惑；使糊涂
brutal a. 严酷的，苛刻的
burden n. 重担，精神负担
category n. 种类，类，类别
cease v. 停止，终止
challenge n. 挑战
characteristic a. 典型的，表示特性的
circumstances n. 情况，事态，情势，形势
clarify v. 澄清，阐明，使清晰明了
classify v. 把…分类
coincide v. 同时发生
commitment n. 承诺，许诺，保证
communicate v. 传达；传递；交流
comparison n. 比较，对照
complex a. 复杂的，错综的；难懂的
complicate v. 使复杂化
comprehend v. 理解，懂；领会
concept n. 概念，观点，思想
conflict n. 冲突，战斗
confront v. 使面对，使面临，使遇到
conscience n. 良心，道德心
conscious a. 意识到的，自觉的；感到的
consent v. 同意，赞同，准许
considerable v. 相当大(或多)的
consistent a. 坚持的，固守的；一贯的
contrast n. (对比之下显出的)悬殊差别；比差(程度)
convince v. 使确信，使信服；说服
cope v. 对付，应付
corrupt a. 堕落的，邪恶的，不道德的
counsel v. 劝告，提议
critical a. 吹毛求疵的，爱挑剔的
crucial a. 决定性的，关键性的
current a. 通行的，通用的；流行的
customary a. 习惯上的，惯常的
decay v. 腐烂，腐朽，腐败
deceive v. 欺骗，诓骗；蒙蔽
deliberate a. 故意的，蓄意的
demonstrate v. 示范操作(产品)
dependent a. 依靠的，依赖的
deprive v. 使不能享受；使不能做
desperate a. 孤注一掷的，拼死的
detect v. 查明，察觉，发现
determine v. 确定；查明；测定
detract v. 减损；诋毁
devote v. 将…献(给)，奉献(to)
discipline v. 惩罚，处罚
dispose of v. 去掉，丢掉；清除，销毁
dispute n. 争论，辩论
disregard v. 不理会，不顾
disrupt v. 扰乱，使中断
distinct a. 明显的，清楚的；清晰的
distract v. 转移(注意力)；使分心
dominate v. 支配，统治，控制
dramatic a. 引人注目的，给人深刻印象的
eager a. 热切的，渴望的
earnest a. 重要的；庄重的
economical a. 经济的，节约的，省俭的
eligible a. 有资格当选的，有条件被选中的
eliminate v. 排除，消除
emotion n. 情感，情绪；感情
emphasis n. 重点，重要性
endure v. 忍耐，忍受
establish v. 建立；建造；设立
evade v. 逃脱，躲开
evaluate v. 对…评价；为…鉴定
evident a. 明显的，明白的
exaggerate v. 夸张，夸大；对…言过其实
excerpt n. 摘录，选录，节录
excessive a. 过多的，过分的；极度的
exclaim v. 呼喊，惊叫
exclude v. 把…排斥在外，不包括；不让(或阻止)…进入
exhaust v. 使精疲力竭；使枯竭
expand v. 发展，扩大，扩充
extend v. 延长；使展期
external a. 外面的，外部的
extraordinary a. 不平常的，不普通的；非凡的，惊人的
extravagant a. 奢侈的，铺张的，浪费的
fertile a. 肥沃的，富饶的；可繁殖的，能生育的
fiction n. 虚构的事
flexible a. 柔韧的，易弯曲的，可弯曲的，灵活的，易适应的
foresight n. 预见，先见之明
formal a. 正式的，合于传统习俗(或礼仪等)的
fragile a. 易碎的；脆的，易损坏的
fragment n. 碎片，破片
frank a. 坦白的，直率的，真诚的
frequency n. 次数，重复发生率

frustration *n.* 挫折，失败，失望
fulfill *v.* 履行，实现
function *n.* 用途，目的，功能，作用
fundamental *a.* 基本的，根本的，基础的
furthermore *adv.* 而且，此外
harsh *a.* 严厉的，无情的；严酷的
hesitate *v.* 犹豫，踌躇，迟疑不决
hinder *v.* 阻碍，妨碍，阻止
horizontal *a.* 水平的，横的
hostile *a.* 怀敌意的；不友善的
humane *a.* 仁爱的，慈善的；人道的
humiliate *v.* 使蒙耻，使丢脸
idle *a.* 闲散的，闲置的
illustrate *v.* (用图或例子)说明，阐明
impression *n.* 印象，感想
impulse *n.* 冲动，突然的欲望，一时的念头
incredible *a.* 难以置信的，不可思议的
indicate *v.* 标示；指示；指出
inferior *a.* (地位、等级等)低等的，下级的
influence *v.* 影响，感化
inhabit *v.* 居住于
intense *a.* 强烈的，剧烈的；极度的
intentional *a.* 有意的，故意的
interference *n.* 干涉，干预；扰乱
internal *a.* 内的，内部的
interpret *v.* 解释，说明，释明
interval *n.* (时间、空间上的)间隔，间距
investigate *v.* 调查，调查研究，审查
legible *a.* 清楚的，易读的
linger *v.* 继续逗留，留恋徘徊
maintain *v.* 维持，保持
maximum *a.* 最高的；最大的；顶点的
minimum *a.* 最低的，最小的
miserable *a.* 痛苦的，苦恼的
misinterpret *v.* 错误地理解；错误地解释
misleading *a.* 使人产生误解的；导致错误结论的
monotonous *a.* 单一得令人厌倦的，毫无变化的
negligent *a.* 疏忽的，忽略的
neutral *a.* 中立的
nevertheless *ad.* 仍然，不过
objection *n.* 反对，异议
objective *n.* 目的，目标
obnoxious, *a.* 使人非常不快的，可憎的
observe *v.* 看到，注意到
obtain *v.* 得到，获得
occur *v.* 发生
originate *v.* 起源，来自；产生
overcome *v.* 克服
overwhelm *v.* 征服，制服，压倒
peculiar *a.* 奇怪的，古怪的
penalize *v.* 对…处罚；对…处刑
perceive *v.* 感知，感觉，察觉
phrase *n.* 词组；习语
possess *v.* 具有(品质等)
potential *n.* 潜力，潜能
practical *a.* 实践的，实际的
precaution *n.* 预防措施，防备办法
precede *v.* (顺序、位置或时间上)处在…之前，先于
precise *a.* 精确的，准确的，确切的
preconception *n.* 先入之见，成见
preference *n.* 更加的喜爱，偏爱
preserve *v.* 保护，保养；维护，保全
prey *n.* 被捕食的动物；捕获的
primary *a.* 首要的，主要的
principal *a.* 最重要的，首要的，主要的
procedure *n.* 程序，手续，步骤
propose *v.* 提出，提议，建议
prosper *v.* 兴旺，繁荣；成功
protest *v.* 抗议，提出异议；反对
pursue *v.* 进行，实行；从事
random *a.* 无一定之规的，任意的
recollect (重新)集中(思想等)
reduction *n.* 减少，缩减
reform *v.* 改革，改变，改造
rejection *n.* 拒绝；退回
reliable *a.* 可靠的；可信赖的
reluctant *a.* 不情愿的，勉强的
remedy *n.* 治疗，治疗法
remote *a.* 远的，遥远的；久远的
renew *v.* 使更生，补充，加固
represent *v.* 代表
resemble *v.* 像，与…相似；类似于
resent *v.* 对…表示忿恨，对…怀恨，怨恨
resort *v.* 求助；凭借，借用
resources *n.* 资源，财富
respond *v.* 作答，回答
restore *v.* 使复原；修复，整修
revise *v.* 修订，订正
revive *v.* 苏醒，复苏
rigid *a.* (不弯曲、不拉伸而)具刚性的；坚硬的，坚固的
scarce *a.* 缺乏的，不足的；供不应求的
security *n.* 安全，平安
seize *v.* 夺取
severe *a.* 严重的，危险的
shallow *a.* 浅的，不深的
significant *a.* 相当数量的，不可忽略的，值得注意的
sole *a.* 单独的，唯一的
solemn *a.* 严重的，严正的，庄严的
solitary *a.* 单独的，独自的
specific *a.* 明确的，确切的；具体的
spite *n.* 恶意，怨恨
stress *n.* 压力，紧张，紧迫
strive *v.* 努力，奋斗
substance *n.* 物质，材料，东西
sufficient *a.* 足够的，充足的
suitable *a.* 合适的；适宜的；适当的
surplus *a.* 过剩的，剩余的，多余的
symbolize *v.* 作为…的象征；象征，标志
sympathize *v.* 同情，表示同情，怜悯
temporary *a.* 暂时的，临时的
tendency *n.* (性格或性质上的)倾向
theme *n.* 题目，主题
theory *n.* 理论；学理，原理
thorough *a.* 彻底地，完全的；透彻的
thrive *v.* 兴旺发达，繁荣，旺盛
timid *a.* 胆怯的，易受惊的
tolerance *n.* 容忍，宽容
trait *n.* 特征，特点，特性
transfer *v.* 搬，使转移
transform *v.* 使变形，使改观
transparent *a.* 透明的
triumph *n.* 胜利，得胜
ultimate *a.* 极点的，绝顶的；终极的
unanimous *a.* 全体一致的，一致同意的
unstable *a.* 不稳定的，不坚定的，易动摇的
utilize *v.* 利用
vague *a.* 含糊的，不明确的
vanish *v.* 突然不见；消失
variety *n.* 种种
vary *v.* 使不同，更改，改变
vast *a.* 广阔的，广大的
version *n.* (某人或从某一角度对事物所作的)一种描述、说法
vertical *a.* 垂直的，竖的
vicinity *n.* 周围地区，临近地区
wholesome *a.* 有益于健康的，增进健康的
withdraw *v.* 抽回，移开

VOCABULARY PERFORMANCE CHART

Chapters

Chapter	Sentence Check 2	Related Words	Word Parts; Syn/Ant; Analogies	Final Check
1				
2				
3				
4				
5				
6				
7				
8				
9				
10				
11				
12				
13				
14				
15				
16				
17				
18				
19				
20				
21				
22				
23				
24				
25				

Unit Tests

	Test 1	Test 2	Test 3
Unit One			
Unit Two			
Unit Three			
Unit Four			
Unit Five			

英语词汇基础

“英语词汇学习丛书” 由美国知名的教材教辅图书出版社 Townsend Press 出版，是美国大学生使用最为广泛的扩大词汇的教学辅导图书之一。正如本丛书的编者所指出的那样，在美国一个学生的前途在某种程度上取决于他 / 她的词汇量的大小。对于我国广大的英语学习者来说，词汇学习当然是英语学习的一个重要方面。

本丛书共有 6 册。每册介绍 240–300 个在 TOEFL、GRE、SAT 等测试中经常出现的单词。本丛书的特点是引导学生根据上下文的语境，包括例证、同义、异义、类比等关系来理解单词，通过反复练习、多次使用来熟悉和记忆单词，从而摒弃死记硬背的学习方法。书中对每个关键单词提供的各类练习能让学生反复使用该单词达 10 次左右。此外，书中部分练习题的题型与 TOEFL、GRE、SAT 等美国常用入学考试的形式相似，对于我国有志于出国留学的学生熟悉题型也有一定的帮助。

《英语词汇基础》(*Groundwork for a Better Vocabulary*) 为本丛书的第二册，书中提供的英语词汇练习适用于我国大学非英语专业四级 (CET4) 学生的水平，也可以用作 TOEFL 培训初、中级阶段的辅助教材。

Townsend Press 英语词汇学习丛书书目

Books in the Townsend Press Vocabulary Series: A Comprehensive Vocabulary Program

Vocabulary Basics	《英语词汇入门》
Groundwork for a Better Vocabulary	《英语词汇基础》
Building Vocabulary Skills	《英语词汇提高》
Improving Vocabulary Skills	《英语词汇扩展》
Advancing Vocabulary Skills	《英语词汇突破》
Advanced Word Power	《英语词汇飞跃》


ISBN 7-81095-457-1

9 787810 954570

定价：27.00 元